



Cisco Nexus 5000 Series NX-OS Layer 2 Switching Configuration Guide, Release 5.2(1)N1(2)

First Published: July 02, 2012

Last Modified: October 19, 2012

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

Text Part Number: OL-27539-02

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1110R)

© 2012 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

Preface

Preface **xiii**

Audience **xiii**

Document Conventions **xiii**

Documentation Feedback **xv**

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request **xv**

CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Information **1**

New and Changed Information for this Release **1**

CHAPTER 2

Overview **3**

Layer 2 Ethernet Switching Overview **3**

VLANs **3**

Private VLANs **4**

Spanning Tree **4**

STP Overview **4**

Rapid PVST+ **5**

MST **5**

STP Extensions **5**

CHAPTER 3

Configuring VLANs **7**

Information About VLANs **7**

Understanding VLANs **7**

Understanding VLAN Ranges **8**

Creating, Deleting, and Modifying VLANs **10**

About the VLAN Trunking Protocol **10**

Guidelines and Limitations for VTP **11**

Configuring a VLAN **11**

Creating and Deleting a VLAN	11
Changing the Range of Reserved VLANs	12
Configuring a VLAN	14
Adding Ports to a VLAN	15
Configuring VTP	16
Verifying the VLAN Configuration	17

CHAPTER 4

Configuring Private VLANs 19

Information About Private VLANs	19
Primary and Secondary VLANs in Private VLANs	20
Private VLAN Ports	20
Primary, Isolated, and Community Private VLANs	21
Associating Primary and Secondary VLANs	22
Private VLAN Promiscuous Trunks	23
Private VLAN Isolated Trunks	23
Broadcast Traffic in Private VLANs	24
Private VLAN Port Isolation	24
Guidelines and Limitations for Private VLANs	24
Configuring a Private VLAN	25
Enabling Private VLANs	25
Configuring a VLAN as a Private VLAN	25
Associating Secondary VLANs with a Primary Private VLAN	26
Configuring an Interface as a Private VLAN Host Port	28
Configuring an Interface as a Private VLAN Promiscuous Port	29
Configuring a Promiscuous Trunk Port	30
Configuring an Isolated Trunk Port	31
Configuring Private VLANs on FEX Trunk Ports	32
Configuring the Allowed VLANs for PVLAN Trunking Ports	33
Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs on Private VLANs	34
Verifying the Private VLAN Configuration	35

CHAPTER 5

Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces 37

Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces	37
Understanding Access and Trunk Interfaces	37
Understanding IEEE 802.1Q Encapsulation	38

Understanding Access VLANs	39
Understanding the Native VLAN ID for Trunk Ports	40
Understanding Allowed VLANs	40
Understanding Native 802.1Q VLANs	40
Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces	41
Configuring a LAN Interface as an Ethernet Access Port	41
Configuring Access Host Ports	42
Configuring Trunk Ports	42
Configuring the Native VLAN for 802.1Q Trunking Ports	43
Configuring the Allowed VLANs for Trunking Ports	44
Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs	45
Verifying the Interface Configuration	46

CHAPTER 6

Configuring Enhanced Virtual Port Channels 47

Information About Enhanced vPCs	48
Enhanced Virtual Port Channels Overview	48
Supported Platforms and Topologies	48
Enhanced vPC Scalability	49
Enhanced vPC Failure Response	49
Licensing Requirements for Enhanced vPC	50
Configuring Enhanced vPCs	50
Overview of Configuration Steps for Enhanced vPC	50
Verifying Enhanced vPCs	51
Verifying the Enhanced vPC Configuration	51
Verifying the Consistency of Port Channel Numbers	52
Verifying Common Port Channel Members	53
Verifying Interface Level Consistency for Enhanced vPCs	54
Enhanced vPC Example Configuration	55

CHAPTER 7

Configuring Rapid PVST+ 59

Information About Rapid PVST+	59
Understanding STP	59
STP Overview	59
Understanding How a Topology is Created	60
Understanding the Bridge ID	60

Bridge Priority Value	60
Extended System ID	61
STP MAC Address Allocation	61
Understanding BPDUs	62
Election of the Root Bridge	63
Creating the Spanning Tree Topology	63
Understanding Rapid PVST+	64
Rapid PVST+ Overview	64
Rapid PVST+ BPDUs	65
Proposal and Agreement Handshake	66
Protocol Timers	67
Port Roles	67
Port States	68
Rapid PVST+ Port State Overview	68
Blocking State	69
Learning State	69
Forwarding State	69
Disabled State	70
Summary of Port States	70
Synchronization of Port Roles	70
Processing Superior BPDU Information	71
Processing Inferior BPDU Information	72
Spanning-Tree Dispute Mechanism	72
Port Cost	72
Port Priority	73
Rapid PVST+ and IEEE 802.1Q Trunks	73
Rapid PVST+ Interoperation with Legacy 802.1D STP	73
Rapid PVST+ Interoperation with 802.1s MST	74
Configuring Rapid PVST+	74
Enabling Rapid PVST+	74
Enabling Rapid PVST+ per VLAN	75
Configuring the Root Bridge ID	76
Configuring a Secondary Root Bridge	77
Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Port Priority	78
Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Path-Cost Method and Port Cost	79

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Bridge Priority of a VLAN	80
Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Hello Time for a VLAN	81
Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Forward Delay Time for a VLAN	81
Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Maximum Age Time for a VLAN	82
Specifying the Link Type	83
Restarting the Protocol	83
Verifying the Rapid PVST+ Configuration	84

CHAPTER 8

Configuring Multiple Spanning Tree 85

Information About MST	85
MST Overview	85
MST Regions	86
MST BPDUs	86
MST Configuration Information	87
IST, CIST, and CST	87
IST, CIST, and CST Overview	87
Spanning Tree Operation Within an MST Region	88
Spanning Tree Operations Between MST Regions	88
MST Terminology	89
Hop Count	90
Boundary Ports	90
Spanning-Tree Dispute Mechanism	91
Port Cost and Port Priority	92
Interoperability with IEEE 802.1D	92
Interoperability with Rapid PVST+: Understanding PVST Simulation	93
Configuring MST	93
MST Configuration Guidelines	93
Enabling MST	93
Entering MST Configuration Mode	94
Specifying the MST Name	95
Specifying the MST Configuration Revision Number	96
Specifying the Configuration on an MST Region	97
Mapping and Unmapping VLANs to MST Instances	98
Mapping Secondary VLANs to Same MSTI as Primary VLANs for Private VLANs	99
Configuring the Root Bridge	100

Configuring a Secondary Root Bridge	101
Configuring the Port Priority	102
Configuring the Port Cost	103
Configuring the Switch Priority	104
Configuring the Hello Time	105
Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time	106
Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time	106
Configuring the Maximum-Hop Count	107
Configuring PVST Simulation Globally	108
Configuring PVST Simulation Per Port	108
Specifying the Link Type	109
Restarting the Protocol	110
Verifying the MST Configuration	111

CHAPTER 9
Configuring STP Extensions 113

Overview	113
Information About STP Extensions	113
Understanding STP Port Types	113
Spanning Tree Edge Ports	113
Spanning Tree Network Ports	114
Spanning Tree Normal Ports	114
Understanding Bridge Assurance	114
Understanding BPDU Guard	114
Understanding BPDU Filtering	115
Understanding Loop Guard	116
Understanding Root Guard	117
Configuring STP Extensions	117
STP Extensions Configuration Guidelines	117
Configuring Spanning Tree Port Types Globally	117
Configuring Spanning Tree Edge Ports on Specified Interfaces	118
Configuring Spanning Tree Network Ports on Specified Interfaces	120
Enabling BPDU Guard Globally	121
Enabling BPDU Guard on Specified Interfaces	121
Enabling BPDU Filtering Globally	122
Enabling BPDU Filtering on Specified Interfaces	123

Enabling Loop Guard Globally	125
Enabling Loop Guard or Root Guard on Specified Interfaces	125
Verifying the STP Extension Configuration	126

CHAPTER 10
Configuring Flex Links 127

Information About Flex Links	127
Guidelines and Limitations for Flex Link	128
Default Settings for Flex Link	129
Configuring Flex Links	130
Configuring Flex Link Preemption	131
Verifying Flex Link Configuration	133
Flex Link Configuration Examples	134

CHAPTER 11
Configuring LLDP 137

Configuring LLDP	137
Configuring Interface LLDP	138

CHAPTER 12
Configuring MAC Address Tables 141

Information About MAC Addresses	141
Configuring MAC Addresses	141
Configuring Static MAC Addresses	141
Configuring the Aging Time for the MAC Table	142
Clearing Dynamic Addresses from the MAC Table	143
Verifying the MAC Address Configuration	143

CHAPTER 13
Configuring IGMP Snooping 145

Information About IGMP Snooping	145
IGMPv1 and IGMPv2	146
IGMPv3	147
IGMP Snooping Querier	147
IGMP Forwarding	147
Configuring IGMP Snooping Parameters	148
Verifying the IGMP Snooping Configuration	151

CHAPTER 14
Configuring MVR 153

Information About MVR	153
MVR Overview	153
MVR Interoperation with Other Features	154
Licensing Requirements for MVR	154
Guidelines and Limitations for MVR	154
Default MVR Settings	155
Configuring MVR	155
Configuring MVR Global Parameters	155
Configuring MVR Interfaces	157
Verifying the MVR Configuration	158

CHAPTER 15

Configuring Traffic Storm Control	161
Information About Traffic Storm Control	161
Guidelines and Limitations for Traffic Storm Control	163
Configuring Traffic Storm Control	164
Verifying the Traffic Storm Control Configuration	164
Traffic Storm Control Example Configuration	165
Default Settings for Traffic Storm Control	165

CHAPTER 16

Configuring the Fabric Extender	167
Information About the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender	167
Fabric Extender Terminology	168
Fabric Extender Features	169
Layer 2 Host Interfaces	169
Host Port Channel	169
VLANs and Private VLANs	170
Virtual Port Channels	170
Fibre Channel over Ethernet Support	171
Protocol Offload	171
Quality of Service	172
Access Control Lists	172
IGMP Snooping	172
Switched Port Analyzer	172
Fabric Interface Features	172
Oversubscription	172

Management Model	172
Forwarding Model	173
Connection Model	173
Static Pinning Fabric Interface Connection	174
Port Channel Fabric Interface Connection	175
Port Numbering Convention	176
Fabric Extender Image Management	176
Fabric Extender Hardware	176
Chassis	176
Ethernet Interfaces	176
Associating a Fabric Extender to a Fabric Interface	177
Associating a Fabric Extender to an Ethernet Interface	177
Associating a Fabric Extender to a Port Channel	178
Disassociating a Fabric Extender from an Interface	180
Configuring Fabric Extender Global Features	181
Enabling the Fabric Extender Locator LED	183
Redistributing the Links	183
Changing the Number of Links	184
Maintaining the Pinning Order	184
Redistributing Host Interfaces	184
Verifying the Fabric Extender Configuration	185
Verifying the Chassis Management Information	188
Configuring the Cisco Nexus N2248TP-E Fabric Extender	192
Configuring the Shared Buffer	193
Configuring the Queue-Limit at the Global Level	194
Configuring the Queue-Limit at the Port Level	195
Configuring Uplink Distance	196



Preface

The Preface contains the following sections:

- [Audience, page xiii](#)
- [Document Conventions, page xiii](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, page xv](#)
- [Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request, page xv](#)

Audience

This publication is for network administrators who configure and maintain Cisco Nexus devices and Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extenders.

Document Conventions



Note

As part of our constant endeavor to remodel our documents to meet our customers' requirements, we have modified the manner in which we document configuration tasks. As a result of this, you may find a deviation in the style used to describe these tasks, with the newly included sections of the document following the new format.

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
bold	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>Italic</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).

Convention	Description
[x y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.
{x y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.
<i>variable</i>	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<code>screen font</code>	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
boldface screen font	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
<i>italic screen font</i>	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
< >	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

This document uses the following conventions:



Note

Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.



Caution

Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to: ciscodfa-docfeedback@cisco.com.

We appreciate your feedback.

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request

For information on obtaining documentation, using the Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST), submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see *What's New in Cisco Product Documentation*, at: <http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/general/whatsnew/whatsnew.html>.

To receive new and revised Cisco technical content directly to your desktop, you can subscribe to the [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation RSS feed](#). RSS feeds are a free service.



New and Changed Information

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [New and Changed Information for this Release](#) , page 1

New and Changed Information for this Release

The following table provides an overview of the significant changes to this guide for this current release. The table does not provide an exhaustive list of all changes made to the configuration guides or of the new features in this release.

Table 1: New Features

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Storm control on Satellite Fabric ports	Added support for configuring storm control on FEX ports.	Configuring Traffic Storm Control
Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Fujitsu (N2K-B22FTS-P) support.	Support for Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Fujitsu (N2K-B22FTS-P).	Configuring the Fabric Extender



Overview

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Layer 2 Ethernet Switching Overview, page 3](#)
- [VLANs, page 3](#)
- [Private VLANs, page 4](#)
- [Spanning Tree, page 4](#)

Layer 2 Ethernet Switching Overview

The device supports simultaneous, parallel connections between Layer 2 Ethernet segments. Switched connections between Ethernet segments last only for the duration of the packet. New connections can be made between different segments for the next packet.

The device assigns a domain (for example, a server) to each device to solve traffic congestion caused by high-bandwidth devices and large number of users.

Because collisions cause significant congestion in Ethernet networks, an effective solution is full-duplex communication. Typically, 10/100-Mbps Ethernet operates in half-duplex mode, which means that stations can either receive or transmit. In full-duplex mode, which is configurable on these interfaces, two stations can transmit and receive at the same time. When packets can flow in both directions simultaneously, the effective Ethernet bandwidth doubles. 1/10-Gigabit Ethernet operates in full-duplex only.

VLANs

A VLAN is a switched network that is logically segmented by function, project team, or application, without regard to the physical locations of the users. VLANs have the same attributes as physical LANs, but you can group end stations even if they are not physically located on the same LAN segment.

Any switch port can belong to a VLAN, and unicast, broadcast, and multicast packets are forwarded and flooded only to end stations in that VLAN. Each VLAN is considered as a logical network, and packets destined for stations that do not belong to the VLAN must be forwarded through a bridge or a router.

All ports are assigned to the default VLAN (VLAN1) when the device comes up.

The devices support 4094 VLANs in accordance with the IEEE 802.1Q standard. These VLANs are organized into several ranges, and you use each range slightly differently. Some of these VLANs are reserved for internal use by the device and are not available for configuration.

**Note**

Inter-Switch Link (ISL) trunking is not supported.

Private VLANs

Private VLANs provide traffic separation and security at the Layer 2 level.

A private VLAN is one or more pairs of a primary VLAN and a secondary VLAN, all with the same primary VLAN. The two types of secondary VLANs are isolated and community VLANs. Hosts on isolated VLANs communicate only with hosts in the primary VLAN. Hosts in a community VLAN can communicate only among themselves and with hosts in the primary VLAN but not with hosts in isolated VLANs or in other community VLANs.

Regardless of the combination of isolated and community secondary VLANs, all interfaces within the primary VLAN comprise one Layer 2 domain, and therefore, require only one IP subnet.

Spanning Tree

This section discusses the implementation of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). Spanning tree is used to refer to IEEE 802.1w and IEEE 802.1s. When the IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol is referred to in the publication, 802.1D is stated specifically.

STP Overview

STP provides a loop-free network at the Layer 2 level. Layer 2 LAN ports send and receive STP frames, which are called Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs), at regular intervals. Network devices do not forward these frames but use the frames to construct a loop-free path.

802.1D is the original standard for STP, and many improvements have enhanced the basic loop-free STP. You can create a separate loop-free path for each VLAN, which is named Per VLAN Spanning Tree (PVST+). Additionally, the entire standard was reworked to make the loop-free convergence process faster to keep up with the faster equipment. This STP standard with faster convergence is the 802.1w standard, which is known as Rapid Spanning Tree (RSTP).

Finally, the 802.1s standard, Multiple Spanning Trees (MST), allows you to map multiple VLANs into a single spanning tree instance. Each instance runs an independent spanning tree topology.

Although the software can interoperate with legacy 802.1D systems, the device runs Rapid PVST+ and MST. You can use either Rapid PVST+ or MST in a given VDC; you cannot mix both in one VDC. Rapid PVST+ is the default STP protocol.

**Note**

Cisco NX-OS uses the extended system ID and MAC address reduction; you cannot disable these features.

In addition, Cisco has created some proprietary features to enhance the spanning tree activities.

Rapid PVST+

Rapid PVST+ is the default spanning tree mode for the software and is enabled by default on the default VLAN and all newly created VLANs.

A single instance, or topology, of RSTP runs on each configured VLAN, and each Rapid PVST+ instance on a VLAN has a single root device. You can enable and disable STP on a per-VLAN basis when you are running Rapid PVST+.

MST

The software also supports MST. The multiple independent spanning tree topologies enabled by MST provide multiple forwarding paths for data traffic, enable load balancing, and reduce the number of STP instances required to support a large number of VLANs.

MST incorporates RSTP, so it also allows rapid convergence. MST improves the fault tolerance of the network because a failure in one instance (forwarding path) does not affect other instances (forwarding paths).

**Note**

Changing the spanning tree mode disrupts the traffic because all spanning tree instances are stopped for the previous mode and started for the new mode.

You can force specified interfaces to send prestandard, rather than standard, MST messages using the command-line interface.

STP Extensions

The software supports the following Cisco proprietary features:

- Spanning tree port types—The default spanning tree port type is normal. You can configure interfaces connected to Layer 2 hosts as edge ports and interfaces connected to Layer 2 switches or bridges as network ports.
- Bridge Assurance—Once you configure a port as a network port, Bridge Assurance sends BPDUs on all ports and moves a port into the blocking state if it no longer receives BPDUs. This enhancement is available only when you are running Rapid PVST+ or MST.
- BPDU Guard—BPDU Guard shuts down the port if that port receives a BPDU.
- BPDU Filter—BPDU Filter suppresses sending and receiving BPDUs on the port.
- Loop Guard—Loop guard prevents the occurrence of loop bridging because of unidirectional link failure in a point-to-point link.
- Root Guard—Root guard prevents a port from becoming a root port or a blocked port. If you configure a port with root guard then the port receives a superior BPDU and it immediately goes to root-inconsistent (blocked) state.



Configuring VLANs

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About VLANs, page 7](#)
- [Configuring a VLAN, page 11](#)

Information About VLANs

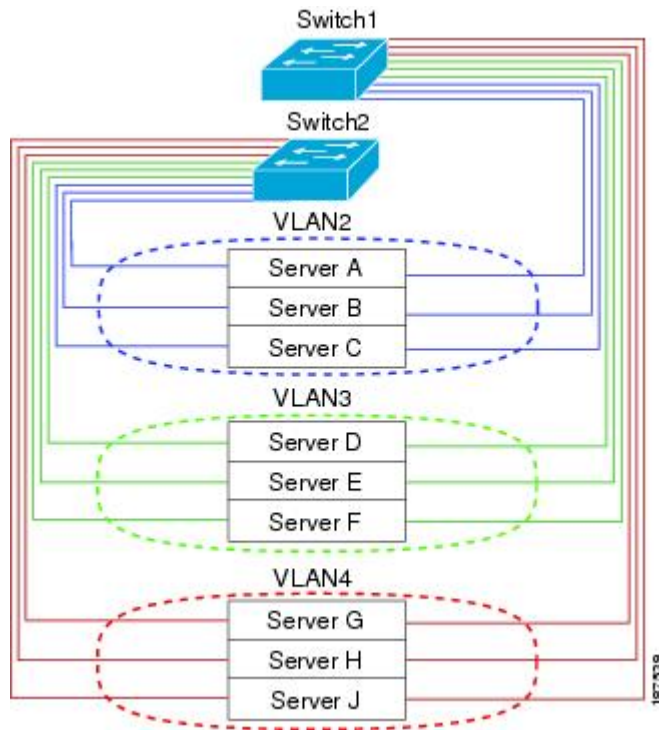
Understanding VLANs

A VLAN is a group of end stations in a switched network that is logically segmented by function, project team, or application, without the limitation to the physical locations of the users. VLANs have the same attributes as physical LANs, but you can group end stations even if they are not physically located on the same LAN segment.

Any port can belong to a VLAN; all unicast, broadcast, and multicast packets are forwarded and flooded only to end stations in that VLAN. Each VLAN is considered a logical network. If a packet destination address does not belong to the VLAN, it must be forwarded through a router.

The following figure shows VLANs as logical networks. In this diagram, the stations in the engineering department are assigned to one VLAN, the stations in the marketing department are assigned to another VLAN, and the stations in the accounting department are assigned to yet another VLAN.

Figure 1: VLANs as Logically Defined Networks



VLANs are usually associated with IP subnetworks. For example, all the end stations in a particular IP subnet belong to the same VLAN. To communicate between VLANs, you must route the traffic.

By default, a newly created VLAN is operational. To disable the VLAN use the **shutdown** command. Additionally, you can configure VLANs to be in the active state (passing traffic), or the suspended state (in which the VLANs are not passing packets). By default, the VLANs are in the active state and pass traffic.



Note

The VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) mode is OFF. VTP BPDUs are dropped on all interfaces of the switch. This process has the effect of partitioning VTP domains if other switches have VTP turned on.

A VLAN can also be configured as a switched virtual interface (SVI). In this case, the switch ports in the VLAN are represented by a virtual interface to a routing or bridging system. The SVI can be configured for routing, in which case it supports Layer 3 protocols for processing packets from all switch ports associated with the VLAN, or for in-band management of the switch.

Understanding VLAN Ranges

The Cisco Nexus device supports VLAN numbers 1 to 4094 in accordance with the IEEE 802.1Q standard. These VLANs are organized into ranges. The switch is physically limited in the number of VLANs it can

support. The hardware also shares this available range with its VSANs. For information about VLAN and VSAN configuration limits, see the configuration limits documentation for your device.

The following table describes the details of the VLAN ranges.

Table 2: VLAN Ranges

VLANs Numbers	Range	Usage
1	Normal	Cisco default. You can use this VLAN, but you cannot modify or delete it.
2—1005	Normal	You can create, use, modify, and delete these VLANs.
1006—4094	Extended	You can create, name, and use these VLANs. You cannot change the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • State is always active. • VLAN is always enabled. You cannot shut down these VLANs.
3968—4049 and 4094	Internally allocated	These 82 VLANs, plus VLAN 4094, are allocated for internal use. You cannot create, delete, or modify any VLANs within the block reserved for internal use.



Note

You cannot configure the internally allocated VLANs (reserved VLANs).



Note

VLANs 3968 to 4049 and 4094 are reserved for internal use; these VLANs cannot be changed or used.

Cisco NX-OS allocates a group of 82 VLAN numbers for those features, such as multicast and diagnostics, that need to use internal VLANs for their operation. By default, the system allocates VLANs numbered 3968 to 4049 for internal use. VLAN 4094 is also reserved for internal use by the switch.

You cannot use, modify, or delete any of the VLANs in the reserved group. You can display the VLANs that are allocated internally and their associated use.

Creating, Deleting, and Modifying VLANs

VLANs are numbered from 1 to 4094. All configured ports belong to the default VLAN when you first bring up the switch. The default VLAN (VLAN1) uses only default values. You cannot create, delete, or suspend activity in the default VLAN.

You create a VLAN by assigning a number to it. You can delete VLANs as well as move them from the active operational state to the suspended operational state. If you attempt to create a VLAN with an existing VLAN ID, the switch goes into the VLAN submode but does not create the same VLAN again.

Newly created VLANs remain unused until ports are assigned to the specific VLAN. All the ports are assigned to VLAN1 by default.

Depending on the range of the VLAN, you can configure the following parameters for VLANs (except the default VLAN):

- VLAN name
- Shutdown or not shutdown

When you delete a specified VLAN, the ports associated to that VLAN are shut down and no traffic flows. However, the system retains all the VLAN-to-port mapping for that VLAN, and when you reenables, or recreates, the specified VLAN, the system automatically reinstates all the original ports to that VLAN.

**Note**

Commands entered in the VLAN configuration submode are immediately executed.

VLANs 3968 to 4049 and 4094 are reserved for internal use; these VLANs cannot be changed or used.

About the VLAN Trunking Protocol

VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) is a distributed VLAN database management protocol that synchronizes the VTP VLAN database across domains. A VTP domain includes one or more network switches that share the same VTP domain name and are connected with trunk interfaces.

The following are the different VTP modes:

- Server mode—Allows users to perform configurations, manage the VLAN database version, and store the VLAN database.
- Client mode—Does not allow users to perform configurations and relies on other switches in the domain to provide configuration information.
- Off mode—Allows users to access the VLAN database (VTP is enabled) but does not participate in VTP.
- Transparent mode—Does not participate in VTP, uses local configuration, and relays VTP packets to other forward ports. VLAN changes affect only the local switch. A VTP transparent network switch does not advertise its VLAN configuration and does not synchronize its VLAN configuration based on received advertisements.

Guidelines and Limitations for VTP

VTP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- When a switch is configured as a VTP client, you cannot create VLANs on the switch in the range of 1 to 1005.
- VLAN 1 is required on all trunk ports used for switch interconnects if VTP is supported in the network. Disabling VLAN 1 from any of these ports prevents VTP from functioning properly.
- If you enable VTP, you must configure either version 1 or version 2. On the Cisco Nexus device, 512 VLANs are supported. If these switches are in a distribution network with other switches, the limit remains the same.

On the Cisco Nexus device, 512 VLANs are supported. If these switches are in a distribution network with other switches, the VLAN limit for the VTP domain is 512. If a Cisco Nexus device client/server receives additional VLANs from a VTP server, they transition to transparent mode.

- If **system vlan long-name** knob is enabled, then VTP configurations will come up in OFF mode and users can change the mode to Transparent. However, changing the mode to Server or Client is not allowed.
- The **show running-configuration** command does not show VLAN or VTP configuration information for VLANs 1 to 1000.
- When deployed with vPC, both vPC switches must be configured identically. vPC performs a Type 2 consistency check for VTP configuration parameters.
- VTP advertisements are not sent out on Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender ports.
- Private VLANs (PVLANS) are supported only when the switch is in transparent mode.
- If you are using VTP in a Token Ring environment, you must use version 2.
- When a switch is configured in VTP client or server mode, VLANs 1002 to 1005 are reserved VLANs.
- VTP pruning is not supported.
- You must enter the **copy running-config startup-config** command followed by a reload after changing a reserved VLAN range. For example:

```
switch(config)# system vlan 2000 reserve
This will delete all configs on vlans 2000-2081. Continue anyway? (y/n) [no] y
```

After the switch reload, VLANs 2000 to 2081 are reserved for internal use, which requires that you enter the **copy running-config startup-config** command before the switch reload. Creating VLANs within this range is not allowed.

Configuring a VLAN

Creating and Deleting a VLAN

You can create or delete all VLANs except the default VLAN and those VLANs that are internally allocated for use by the switch. Once a VLAN is created, it is automatically in the active state.

**Note**

When you delete a VLAN, ports associated to that VLAN shut down. The traffic does not flow and the packets are dropped.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vlan** {vlan-id | vlan-range}
3. switch(config-vlan)# **no vlan** {vlan-id | vlan-range}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vlan {vlan-id vlan-range}	Creates a VLAN or a range of VLANs. If you enter a number that is already assigned to a VLAN, the switch moves into the VLAN configuration submode for that VLAN. If you enter a number that is assigned to an internally allocated VLAN, the system returns an error message. However, if you enter a range of VLANs and one or more of the specified VLANs is outside the range of internally allocated VLANs, the command takes effect on <i>only</i> those VLANs outside the range. The range is from 2 to 4094; VLAN1 is the default VLAN and cannot be created or deleted. You cannot create or delete those VLANs that are reserved for internal use.
Step 3	switch(config-vlan)# no vlan {vlan-id vlan-range}	Deletes the specified VLAN or range of VLANs and removes you from the VLAN configuration submode. You cannot delete VLAN1 or the internally allocated VLANs.

This example shows how to create a range of VLANs from 15 to 20:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 15-20
```

**Note**

You can create and delete VLANs in the VLAN configuration submode.

Changing the Range of Reserved VLANs

To change the range of reserved VLANs, you must be in global configuration mode. After entering this command, you must do the following tasks:

- Enter the **copy running-config startup-config** command
- Reload the device

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **config t**
2. **system vlan *start-vlan* reserve**
3. **copy running-config startup-config**
4. **reload**
5. (Optional) **show system vlan reserved**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config t Example: <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	system vlan <i>start-vlan</i> reserve Example: <pre>switch(config)# system vlan 3968 reserve</pre>	<p>Allows you to change the reserved VLAN range by specifying the starting VLAN ID for your desired range.</p> <p>You can change the reserved VLANs to any other 82 contiguous VLAN ranges. When you reserve such a range, it frees up the range of VLANs that were allocated for internal use by default, and all of those VLANs are available for user configuration except for VLAN 4094.</p> <p>Note To return to the default range of reserved VLANs (3968-4049 and 4094), you must enter the no system vlan <i>start-vlan</i> reserve command.</p>
Step 3	copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	<p>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</p> <p>Note You must enter this command if you change the reserved block.</p>
Step 4	reload Example: <pre>switch(config)# reload</pre>	<p>Reloads the software, and modifications to VLAN ranges become effective.</p> <p>For more details about this command, see the <i>Cisco Nexus 7000 Series NX-OS Fundamentals Configuration Guide, Release 6.x</i>.</p>
Step 5	show system vlan reserved Example: <pre>switch(config)# show system vlan reserved</pre>	<p>(Optional)</p> <p>Displays the configured changes to the VLAN range.</p>

This example shows how to change the range of reserved VLANs:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# system vlan 1006 reserve
This will delete all configs on vlans 1006-1087. Continue anyway? (y/n) [no] yes
Note: After switch reload, VLANs 1006-1087 will be reserved for internal use.
```

```

This requires copy running-config to startup-config before
switch reload. Creating VLANs within this range is not allowed.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config)# reload
switch(config)# show system vlan reserved

```

**Note**

You must reload the device for this change to take effect.

Configuring a VLAN

To configure or modify the VLAN for the following parameters, you must be in the VLAN configuration submode:

- Name

**Note**

VLAN name can be either a short name (up to 32 characters) or long name (up to 128 characters). To configure VLAN long-name of up to 128 characters, you must enable **system vlan long-name** command.

- Shut down

**Note**

You cannot create, delete, or modify the default VLAN or the internally allocated VLANs. Additionally, some of these parameters cannot be modified on some VLANs.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vlan** {vlan-id | vlan-range}
3. switch(config-vlan)# **name** vlan-name
4. switch(config-vlan)# **state** {active | suspend}
5. (Optional) switch(config-vlan)# **no shutdown**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vlan {vlan-id vlan-range}	Enters VLAN configuration submode. If the VLAN does not exist, the system first creates the specified VLAN.
Step 3	switch(config-vlan)# name vlan-name	Names the VLAN. You can enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to name the VLAN. You cannot change the name of VLAN1 or the internally allocated VLANs. The default value is VLANxxxx where xxxx represents four numeric digits (including leading zeroes) equal to the VLAN ID number.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	switch(config-vlan)# state { active suspend }	Sets the state of the VLAN to active or suspend. While the VLAN state is suspended, the ports associated with this VLAN are shut down, and that VLAN does not pass any traffic. The default state is active. You cannot suspend the state for the default VLAN or VLANs 1006 to 4094.
Step 5	switch(config-vlan)# no shutdown	(Optional) Enables the VLAN. The default value is no shutdown (or enabled). You cannot shut down the default VLAN, VLAN1, or VLANs 1006 to 4094.

This example shows how to configure optional parameters for VLAN 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 5
switch(config-vlan)# name accounting
switch(config-vlan)# state active
switch(config-vlan)# no shutdown
```

Adding Ports to a VLAN

After you have completed the configuration of a VLAN, assign ports to it.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {*ethernet slot/port* | **port-channel number**}
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport access vlan** *vlan-id*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface { <i>ethernet slot/port</i> port-channel number }	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode. The interface can be a physical Ethernet port or an EtherChannel.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Sets the access mode of the interface to the specified VLAN.

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet interface to join VLAN 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/13
switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan 5
```

Configuring VTP

You can configure VTP in the client or server mode on Cisco Nexus devices.

You can enable VTP and then configure the VTP mode (server [default], client, transparent, or off). If you enable VTP, you must configure either version 1 or version 2. If you are using VTP in a Token Ring environment, you must use version 2.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **feature vtp**
3. switch(config)# **vtp domain** *domain-name*
4. switch(config)# **vtp version** {1 | 2}
5. switch(config)# **vtp file** *file-name*
6. switch(config)# **vtp password** *password-value*
7. switch(config)# **exit**
8. (Optional) switch# **show vtp status**
9. (Optional) switch# **show vtp counters**
10. (Optional) switch# **show vtp interface**
11. (Optional) switch# **show vtp password**
12. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# feature vtp	Enables VTP on the device. The default is disabled.
Step 3	switch(config)# vtp domain <i>domain-name</i>	Specifies the name of the VTP domain that you want this device to join. The default is blank.
Step 4	switch(config)# vtp version {1 2}	Sets the VTP version that you want to use. The default is version 1.
Step 5	switch(config)# vtp file <i>file-name</i>	Specifies the ASCII filename of the IFS file system file where the VTP configuration is stored.
Step 6	switch(config)# vtp password <i>password-value</i>	Specifies the password for the VTP administrative domain.
Step 7	switch(config)# exit	Exits the configuration submode.
Step 8	switch# show vtp status	(Optional) Displays information about the VTP configuration on the device, such as the version, mode, and revision number.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	switch# show vtp counters	(Optional) Displays information about VTP advertisement statistics on the device.
Step 10	switch# show vtp interface	(Optional) Displays the list of VTP-enabled interfaces.
Step 11	switch# show vtp password	(Optional) Displays the password for the management VTP domain.
Step 12	switch# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows the VTP status and that the switch is capable of supporting Version 2 and that the switch is running Version 1:

```
switch(config)# show vtp status
VTP Status Information
-----
VTP Version                : 2 (capable)
Configuration Revision      : 0
Maximum VLANs supported locally : 1005
Number of existing VLANs    : 502
VTP Operating Mode         : Transparent
VTP Domain Name            :
VTP Pruning Mode           : Disabled (Operationally Disabled)
VTP V2 Mode                : Disabled
VTP Traps Generation       : Disabled
MD5 Digest                 : 0xF5 0xF1 0xEC 0xE7 0x29 0x0C 0x2D 0x01
Configuration last modified by 60.10.10.1 at 0-0-00 00:00:00
VTP version running        : 1
```

Verifying the VLAN Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
switch# show running-config vlan [vlan_id vlan_range]	Displays VLAN information.
switch# show vlan [brief id [vlan_id vlan_range] name name summary]	Displays selected configuration information for the defined VLAN(s).
switch# show system vlan reserved	Displays the system reserved VLAN range.



Configuring Private VLANs

This chapter contains the following sections:

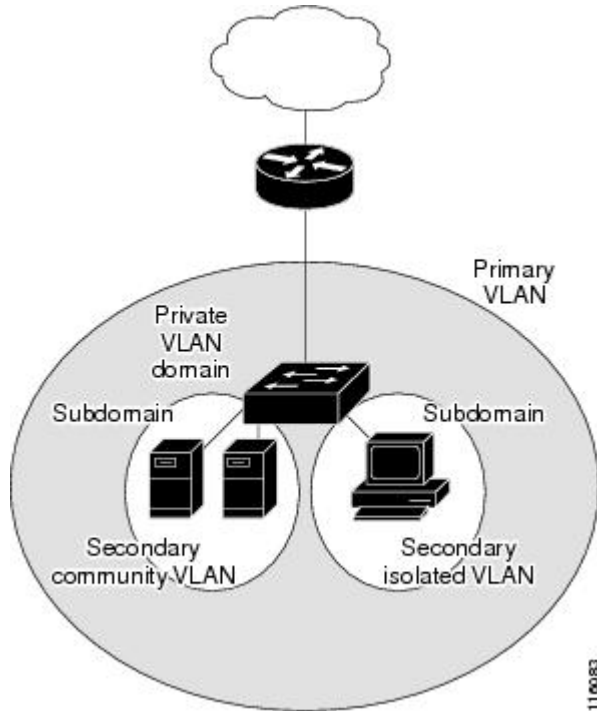
- [Information About Private VLANs, page 19](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Private VLANs, page 24](#)
- [Configuring a Private VLAN, page 25](#)
- [Verifying the Private VLAN Configuration, page 35](#)

Information About Private VLANs

A private VLAN (PVLAN) partitions the Ethernet broadcast domain of a VLAN into subdomains, allowing you to isolate the ports on the switch from each other. A subdomain consists of a primary VLAN and one or more secondary VLANs (see the following figure). All VLANs in a PVLAN domain share the same primary VLAN. The secondary VLAN ID differentiates one subdomain from another. The secondary VLANs can either be isolated VLANs or community VLANs. A host on an isolated VLAN can communicate only with

the associated promiscuous port in its primary VLAN. Hosts on community VLANs can communicate among themselves and with their associated promiscuous port but not with ports in other community VLANs.

Figure 2: Private VLAN Domain



Note

You must first create the VLAN before you can convert it to a PVLAN, either primary or secondary.

Primary and Secondary VLANs in Private VLANs

A private VLAN domain has only one primary VLAN. Each port in a private VLAN domain is a member of the primary VLAN; the primary VLAN is the entire private VLAN domain.

Secondary VLANs provide isolation between ports within the same private VLAN domain. The following two types are secondary VLANs within a primary VLAN:

- **Isolated VLANs**—Ports within an isolated VLAN cannot communicate directly with each other at the Layer 2 level.
- **Community VLANs**—Ports within a community VLAN can communicate with each other but cannot communicate with ports in other community VLANs or in any isolated VLANs at the Layer 2 level.

Private VLAN Ports

The three types of PVLAN ports are as follows:

- **Promiscuous port**—A promiscuous port belongs to the primary VLAN. The promiscuous port can communicate with all interfaces, including the community and isolated host ports, that belong to those secondary VLANs associated to the promiscuous port and associated with the primary VLAN. You can have several promiscuous ports in a primary VLAN. Each promiscuous port can have several secondary VLANs or no secondary VLANs that are associated to that port. You can associate a secondary VLAN to more than one promiscuous port, as long as the promiscuous port and secondary VLANs are within the same primary VLAN. You may want to do this for load-balancing or redundancy purposes. You can also have secondary VLANs that are not associated to any promiscuous port.

A promiscuous port can be configured either as an access port or as a trunk port.

- **Isolated port**—An isolated port is a host port that belongs to an isolated secondary VLAN. This port has complete isolation from other ports within the same PVLAN domain, except that it can communicate with associated promiscuous ports. PVLANS block all traffic to isolated ports except traffic from promiscuous ports. Traffic received from an isolated port is forwarded only to promiscuous ports. You can have more than one isolated port in a specified isolated VLAN. Each port is completely isolated from all other ports in the isolated VLAN.

An isolated port can be configured as either an access port or a trunk port.

- **Community port**—A community port is a host port that belongs to a community secondary VLAN. Community ports communicate with other ports in the same community VLAN and with associated promiscuous ports. These interfaces are isolated from all other interfaces in other communities and from all isolated ports within the PVLAN domain.

A community port must be configured as an access port. A community VLAN must not be enabled on an isolated trunk.

**Note**

A trunk port on the Fabric Extender (FEX) can be either a FEX trunk port or a FEX isolated trunk port.

**Note**

Because trunks can support the VLANs that carry traffic between promiscuous, isolated, and community ports, the isolated and community port traffic might enter or leave the switch through a trunk interface.

Primary, Isolated, and Community Private VLANs

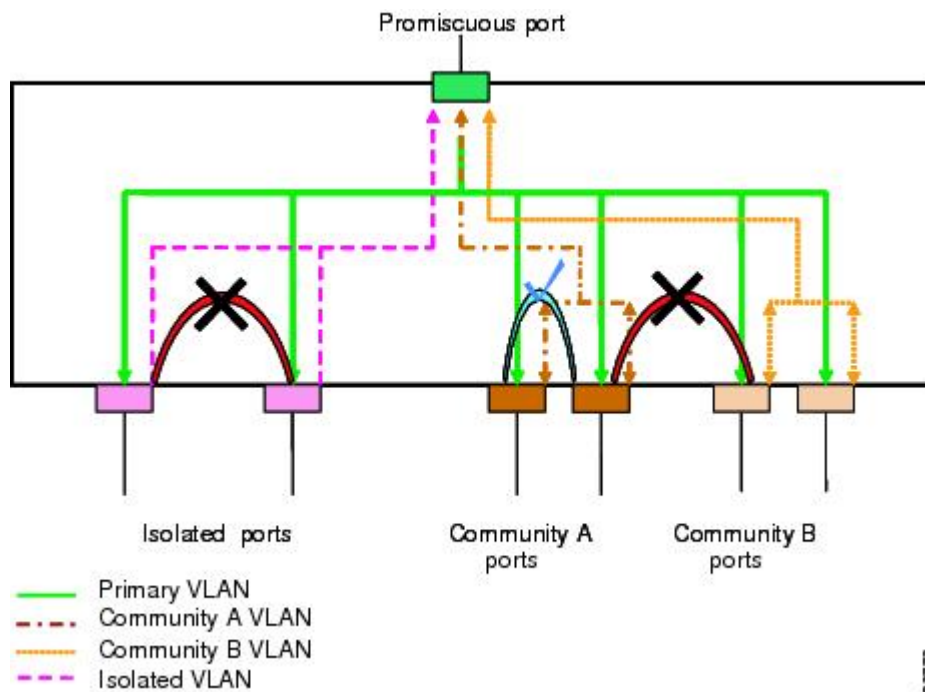
Primary VLANs and the two types of secondary VLANs (isolated and community) have these characteristics:

- **Primary VLAN**— The primary VLAN carries traffic from the promiscuous ports to the host ports, both isolated and community, and to other promiscuous ports.
- **Isolated VLAN** —An isolated VLAN is a secondary VLAN that carries unidirectional traffic upstream from the hosts toward the promiscuous ports. You can configure only one isolated VLAN in a PVLAN domain. An isolated VLAN can have several isolated ports. The traffic from each isolated port also remains completely separate.
- **Community VLAN**—A community VLAN is a secondary VLAN that carries upstream traffic from the community ports to the promiscuous port and to other host ports in the same community. You can configure multiple community VLANs in a PVLAN domain. The ports within one community can

communicate, but these ports cannot communicate with ports in any other community or isolated VLAN in the private VLAN.

The following figure shows the traffic flows within a PVLAN, along with the types of VLANs and types of ports.

Figure 3: Private VLAN Traffic Flows



Note

The PVLAN traffic flows are unidirectional from the host ports to the promiscuous ports. Traffic received on primary VLAN enforces no separation and forwarding is done as in a normal VLAN.

A promiscuous access port can serve only one primary VLAN and multiple secondary VLANs (community and isolated VLANs). A promiscuous trunk port can carry traffic for several primary VLANs. Multiple secondary VLANs under a given primary VLAN can be mapped to promiscuous trunk ports. With a promiscuous port, you can connect a wide range of devices as access points to a PVLAN. For example, you can use a promiscuous port to monitor or back up all the PVLAN servers from an administration workstation.

In a switched environment, you can assign an individual PVLAN and associated IP subnet to each individual or common group of end stations. The end stations need to communicate only with a default gateway to communicate outside the private VLAN.

Associating Primary and Secondary VLANs

To allow host ports in secondary VLANs to communicate outside the PVLAN, you associate secondary VLANs to the primary VLAN. If the association is not operational, the host ports (community and isolated ports) in the secondary VLAN are brought down.

**Note**

You can associate a secondary VLAN with only one primary VLAN.

For an association to be operational, the following conditions must be met:

- The primary VLAN must exist and be configured as a primary VLAN.
- The secondary VLAN must exist and be configured as either an isolated or community VLAN.

**Note**

Use the **show vlan private-vlan** command to verify that the association is operational. The switch does not display an error message when the association is nonoperational.

If you delete either the primary or secondary VLAN, the ports that are associated with the VLAN become inactive. Use the **no private-vlan** command to return the VLAN to the normal mode. All primary and secondary associations on that VLAN are suspended, but the interfaces remain in PVLAN mode. When you convert the VLAN back to PVLAN mode, the original associations are reinstated.

If you enter the **no vlan** command for the primary VLAN, all PVLAN associations with that VLAN are deleted. However, if you enter the **no vlan** command for a secondary VLAN, the PVLAN associations with that VLAN are suspended and are restored when you recreate the specified VLAN and configure it as the previous secondary VLAN.

In order to change the association between a secondary and primary VLAN, you must first remove the current association and then add the desired association.

Private VLAN Promiscuous Trunks

A promiscuous trunk port can carry traffic for several primary VLANs. Multiple secondary VLANs under a given primary VLAN can be mapped to a promiscuous trunk port. Traffic on the promiscuous port is received and transmitted with a primary VLAN tag.

Private VLAN Isolated Trunks

An isolated trunk port can carry traffic for multiple isolated PVLANS. Traffic for a community VLAN is not carried by isolated trunk ports. Traffic on isolated trunk ports is received and transmitted with an isolated VLAN tag. Isolated trunk ports are intended to be connected to host servers.

To support isolated PVLAN ports on a Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender, the Cisco Nexus device must prevent communication between the isolated ports on the FEX; all forwarding occurs through the switch.

**Caution**

You must disable all the FEX isolated trunk ports before configuring PVLANS on the FEX trunk ports. If the FEX isolated trunk ports and the FEX trunk ports are both enabled, unwanted network traffic might occur.

For unicast traffic, you can prevent such a communication without any side effects.

For multicast traffic, the FEX provides replication of the frames. To prevent communication between isolated PVLAN ports on the FEX, the switch prevents multicast frames from being sent back through the fabric ports.

This restriction prevents communication between an isolated VLAN and a promiscuous port on the FEX. However, as host interfaces are not intended to be connected to another switch or router, you cannot enable a promiscuous port on a FEX.

Broadcast Traffic in Private VLANs

Broadcast traffic from ports in a private VLAN flows in the following ways:

- The broadcast traffic flows from a promiscuous port to all ports in the primary VLAN (which includes all the ports in the community and isolated VLANs). This broadcast traffic is distributed to all ports within the primary VLAN, including those ports that are not configured with private VLAN parameters.
- The broadcast traffic from an isolated port is distributed only to those promiscuous ports in the primary VLAN that are associated to that isolated port.
- The broadcast traffic from community ports is distributed to all ports within the port's community and to all promiscuous ports that are associated to the community port. The broadcast packets are not distributed to any other communities within the primary VLAN or to any isolated ports.

Private VLAN Port Isolation

You can use PVLANS to control access to end stations as follows:

- Configure selected interfaces connected to end stations as isolated ports to prevent any communication. For example, if the end stations are servers, this configuration prevents communication between the servers.
- Configure interfaces connected to default gateways and selected end stations (for example, backup servers) as promiscuous ports to allow all end stations access to a default gateway.

Guidelines and Limitations for Private VLANs

When configuring PVLANS, follow these guidelines:

- You must have already created the VLAN before you can assign the specified VLAN as a private VLAN.
- You must enable PVLANS before the switch can apply the PVLAN functionality.
- You cannot disable PVLANS if the switch has any operational ports in a PVLAN mode.
- Enter the **private-vlan synchronize** command from within the Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) region definition to map the secondary VLANs to the same MST instance as the primary VLAN.
- You must disable all the FEX isolated trunk ports before configuring FEX trunk ports.
- You cannot connect a second switch to a promiscuous or isolated PVLAN trunk. The promiscuous or isolated PVLAN trunk is supported only on host-switch.

Configuring a Private VLAN

Enabling Private VLANs

You must enable PVLANs on the switch to use the PVLAN functionality.

**Note**

The PVLAN commands do not appear until you enable the PVLAN feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **feature private-vlan**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no feature private-vlan**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# feature private-vlan	Enables the PVLAN feature on the switch.
Step 3	switch(config)# no feature private-vlan	(Optional) Disables the PVLAN feature on the switch. Note You cannot disable PVLANS if there are operational ports on the switch that are in PVLAN mode.

This example shows how to enable the PVLAN feature on the switch:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature private-vlan
```

Configuring a VLAN as a Private VLAN

To create a PVLAN, you first create a VLAN, and then configure that VLAN to be a PVLAN.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vlan** {vlan-id | vlan-range}
3. switch(config-vlan)# **private-vlan** {community | isolated | primary}
4. (Optional) switch(config-vlan)# **no private-vlan** {community | isolated | primary}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vlan {vlan-id vlan-range}	Places you into the VLAN configuration submenu.
Step 3	switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan {community isolated primary}	Configures the VLAN as either a community, isolated, or primary PVLAN. In a PVLAN, you must have one primary VLAN. You can have multiple community and isolated VLANs.
Step 4	switch(config-vlan)# no private-vlan {community isolated primary}	(Optional) Removes the PVLAN configuration from the specified VLAN(s) and returns it to normal VLAN mode. If you delete either the primary or secondary VLAN, the ports that are associated with the VLAN become inactive.

This example shows how to assign VLAN 5 to a PVLAN as the primary VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 5
switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan primary
```

This example shows how to assign VLAN 100 to a PVLAN as a community VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 100
switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan community
```

This example shows how to assign VLAN 200 to a PVLAN as an isolated VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 200
switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan isolated
```

Associating Secondary VLANs with a Primary Private VLAN

When you associate secondary VLANs with a primary VLAN, follow these guidelines:

- The *secondary-vlan-list* parameter cannot contain spaces. It can contain multiple comma-separated items. Each item can be a single secondary VLAN ID or a hyphenated range of secondary VLAN IDs.
- The *secondary-vlan-list* parameter can contain multiple community VLAN IDs and one isolated VLAN ID.

- Enter a *secondary-vlan-list* or use the **add** keyword with a *secondary-vlan-list* to associate secondary VLANs with a primary VLAN.
- Use the **remove** keyword with a *secondary-vlan-list* to clear the association between secondary VLANs and a primary VLAN.
- You change the association between a secondary and primary VLAN by removing the existing association and then adding the desired association.

If you delete either the primary or secondary VLAN, the VLAN becomes inactive on the port where the association is configured. When you enter the **no private-vlan** command, the VLAN returns to the normal VLAN mode. All primary and secondary associations on that VLAN are suspended, but the interfaces remain in PVLAN mode. If you again convert the specified VLAN to PVLAN mode, the original associations are reinstated.

If you enter the **no vlan** command for the primary VLAN, all PVLAN associations with that VLAN are lost. However, if you enter the **no vlan** command for a secondary VLAN, the PVLAN associations with that VLAN are suspended and are reinstated when you recreate the specified VLAN and configure it as the previous secondary VLAN.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vlan** *primary-vlan-id*
3. switch(config-vlan)# **private-vlan association** {[**add**] *secondary-vlan-list* | **remove** *secondary-vlan-list*}
4. (Optional) switch(config-vlan)# **no private-vlan association**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vlan <i>primary-vlan-id</i>	Enters the number of the primary VLAN that you are working in for the PVLAN configuration.
Step 3	switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan association {[add] <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> remove <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> }	Associates the secondary VLANs with the primary VLAN. Use the remove keyword with a <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> to clear the association between secondary VLANs and a primary VLAN.
Step 4	switch(config-vlan)# no private-vlan association	(Optional) Removes all associations from the primary VLAN and returns it to normal VLAN mode.

This example shows how to associate community VLANs 100 through 110 and isolated VLAN 200 with primary VLAN 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan 5
switch(config-vlan)# private-vlan association 100-110, 200
```

Configuring an Interface as a Private VLAN Host Port

In PVLANs, host ports are part of the secondary VLANs, which are either community VLANs or isolated VLANs. Configuring a PVLAN host port involves two steps. First, you define the port as a PVLAN host port and then you configure a host association between the primary and secondary VLANs.



Note

We recommend that you enable BPDU Guard on all interfaces configured as a host ports.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type* [*chassis/*]*slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode private-vlan host**
4. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan host-association** {*primary-vlan-id*} {*secondary-vlan-id*}
5. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no switchport private-vlan host-association**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type</i> [<i>chassis/</i>] <i>slot/port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN host port. This port can be on a FEX (identified by the chassis option).
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host	Configures the port as a host port for a PVLAN.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association { <i>primary-vlan-id</i> } { <i>secondary-vlan-id</i> }	Associates the port with the primary and secondary VLANs of a PVLAN. The secondary VLAN can be either an isolated or community VLAN.
Step 5	switch(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan host-association	(Optional) Removes the PVLAN association from the port.

This example shows how to configure Ethernet port 1/12 as a host port for a PVLAN and associate it to primary VLAN 5 and secondary VLAN 101:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/12
switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan host-association 5 101
```

Configuring an Interface as a Private VLAN Promiscuous Port

In a PVLAN domain, promiscuous ports are part of the primary VLAN. Configuring a promiscuous port involves two steps. First, you define the port as a promiscuous port and then you configure the mapping between a secondary VLAN and the primary VLAN.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous**
4. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan mapping** {*primary-vlan-id*} {*secondary-vlan-list* | **add** *secondary-vlan-list* | **remove** *secondary-vlan-list*}
5. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no switchport private-vlan mapping**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN promiscuous port. A physical interface is required. This port cannot be on a FEX.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous	Configures the port as a promiscuous port for a PVLAN. You can only enable a physical Ethernet port as the promiscuous port.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping { <i>primary-vlan-id</i> } { <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> add <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> remove <i>secondary-vlan-list</i> }	Configures the port as a promiscuous port and associates the specified port with a primary VLAN and a selected list of secondary VLANs. The secondary VLAN can be either an isolated or community VLAN.
Step 5	switch(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan mapping	(Optional) Clears the mapping from the PVLAN.

This example shows how to configure Ethernet interface 1/4 as a promiscuous port associated with primary VLAN 5 and secondary isolated VLAN 200:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping 5 200
```

Configuring a Promiscuous Trunk Port

In a PVLAN domain, promiscuous trunks are part of the primary VLAN. Promiscuous trunk ports can carry multiple primary VLANs. Multiple secondary VLANs under a given primary VLAN can be mapped to a promiscuous trunk port.

Configuring a promiscuous port involves two steps. First, you define the port as a promiscuous port and then you configure the mapping between a secondary VLAN and the primary VLAN. Multiple primary VLANs can be enabled by configuring multiple mappings.



Note

The number of mappings on a PVLAN trunk port is limited to 16.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous**
4. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan mapping trunk** *{primary-vlan-id}* *{secondary-vlan-id}*
5. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no switchport private-vlan mapping trunk** *[primary-vlan-id]*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN promiscuous trunk port.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous	Configures the port as a promiscuous trunk port for a PVLAN. You can only enable a physical Ethernet port as the promiscuous port. This port cannot be on a FEX.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping trunk <i>{primary-vlan-id}</i> <i>{secondary-vlan-id}</i>	Maps the trunk port with the primary and secondary VLANs of a PVLAN. The secondary VLAN can be either an isolated or community VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	switch(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan mapping trunk [<i>primary-vlan-id</i>]	(Optional) Removes the PVLAN mapping from the port. If the <i>primary-vlan-id</i> is not supplied, all PVLAN mappings are removed from the port.

This example shows how to configure Ethernet interface 1/1 as a promiscuous trunk port for a PVLAN and then map the secondary VLANs to the primary VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk promiscuous
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping trunk 5 100
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping trunk 5 200
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan mapping trunk 6 300
```

Configuring an Isolated Trunk Port

In a PVLAN domain, isolated trunks are part of a secondary VLAN. Isolated trunk ports can carry multiple isolated VLANs. Only one isolated VLAN under a given primary VLAN can be associated to an isolated trunk port. Configuring an isolated trunk port involves two steps. First, you define the port as an isolated trunk port and then you configure the association between the isolated and primary VLANs. Multiple isolated VLANs can be enabled by configuring multiple associations.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface type** [*chassis*]/*slot*/*port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode private-vlan trunk** [*secondary*]
4. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan association trunk** {*primary-vlan-id*} {*secondary-vlan-id*}
5. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no switchport private-vlan association trunk** [*primary-vlan-id*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface type [<i>chassis</i>]/ <i>slot</i> / <i>port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN isolated trunk port. This port can be on a FEX (identified by the <i>chassis</i> option).
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk [<i>secondary</i>]	Configures the port as a secondary trunk port for a PVLAN. Note The secondary keyword is assumed if it is not present.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan association trunk { <i>primary-vlan-id</i> } { <i>secondary-vlan-id</i> }	Associates the isolated trunk port with the primary and secondary VLANs of a PVLAN. The secondary VLAN should be an isolated VLAN. Only one isolated VLAN can be mapped under a given primary VLAN.
Step 5	switch(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan association trunk [<i>primary-vlan-id</i>]	(Optional) Removes the PVLAN association from the port. If the <i>primary-vlan-id</i> is not supplied, all PVLAN associations are removed from the port.

This example shows how to configure Ethernet interface 1/1 as an isolated trunk port for a PVLAN and then associate the secondary VLANs to the primary VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan trunk secondary
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan association trunk 5 100
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan association trunk 6 200
```

Configuring Private VLANs on FEX Trunk Ports

To enable a FEX HIF configured as a normal dot1q trunk port, the **system private-vlan fex trunk** command must be enabled to allow this interface to forward both primary and secondary VLAN traffic. FEX trunk ports extend the PVLAN domain to all the hosts connected to it and when configured, globally affects all FEX ports connected to the Cisco Nexus device.



Note

The FEX interface does not support configurations that include promiscuous ports. Also, the FEX interface does not support connections to devices that have promiscuous ports. When promiscuous functionality is required, the device, such as a Cisco Nexus 1000V, must connect to the base ports of the Cisco Nexus device.



Caution

You must disable all the FEX isolated trunk ports and isolated host ports before configuring PVLANS on the FEX trunk ports. If the FEX isolated trunk ports and the FEX trunk ports are both enabled, unwanted network traffic might occur.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **system private-vlan fex trunk**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# system private-vlan fex trunk	Enables PVLANS on FEX trunk ports.
Step 3	switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows how to configure a PVLAN over a FEX trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system private-vlan fex trunk
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuring the Allowed VLANs for PVLAN Trunking Ports

Isolated trunk and promiscuous trunk ports can carry traffic from regular VLANs along with PVLANS.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface type** [*chassis/*]*slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan trunk allowed vlan** {*vlan-list* | **all** | **none** [**add** | **except** | **none** | **remove** {*vlan-list*}]}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface type [<i>chassis/</i>] <i>slot/port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN host port. This port can be on a FEX (identified by the chassis option).
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan trunk allowed vlan { <i>vlan-list</i> all none [add except none remove { <i>vlan-list</i> }]}	Sets the allowed VLANs for the private trunk interface. The default is to allow only mapped/associated VLANs on the PVLAN trunk interface. Note The primary VLANs do not need to be explicitly added to the allowed VLAN list. They are added automatically once there is a mapping between primary and secondary VLANs.

This example shows how to add VLANs to the list of allowed VLANs on an Ethernet PVLAN trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan trunk allowed vlan 15-20
```

Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs on Private VLANs

Typically, you configure 802.1Q trunks with a native VLAN ID, which strips tagging from all packets on that VLAN. This configuration allows untagged traffic and control traffic to transit the Cisco Nexus device. Secondary VLANs cannot be configured with a native VLAN ID on promiscuous trunk ports. Primary VLANs cannot be configured with a native VLAN ID on isolated trunk ports.



Note

A trunk can carry the traffic of multiple VLANs. Traffic that belongs to the native VLAN is not encapsulated to transit the trunk. Traffic for other VLANs is encapsulated with tags that identify the VLAN that the traffic belongs to.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the PVLAN feature is enabled.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface type** [*chassis/*]*slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport private-vlan trunk native {vlan vlan-id}**
4. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no switchport private-vlan trunk native {vlan vlan-id}**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface type [<i>chassis/</i>] <i>slot/port</i>	Selects the port to configure as a PVLAN host port. This port can be on a FEX (identified by the chassis option).
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport private-vlan trunk native {vlan vlan-id}	Sets the native VLAN ID for the PVLAN trunk. The default is VLAN 1.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# no switchport private-vlan trunk native {vlan vlan-id}	(Optional) Removes the native VLAN ID from the PVLAN trunk.

Verifying the Private VLAN Configuration

Use the following commands to display PVLAN configuration information.

Command	Purpose
switch# show feature	Displays the features enabled on the switch.
switch# show interface switchport	Displays information on all interfaces configured as switch ports.
switch# show vlan private-vlan [type]	Displays the status of the PVLAN.

This example shows how to display the PVLAN configuration:

```
switch# show vlan private-vlan
Primary Secondary Type Ports
-----
5        100      community
5        101      community    Eth1/12, Eth100/1/1
5        102      community
5        110      community
5        200      isolated    Eth1/2
switch# show vlan private-vlan type
Vlan Type
----
5      primary
100    community
101    community
102    community
110    community
200    isolated
```

This example shows how to display enabled features (some of the output has been removed for brevity):

```
switch# show feature
Feature Name      Instance  State
-----
fcsp              1        enabled
...
interface-vlan    1        enabled
private-vlan      1        enabled
udld              1        disabled
...
```




CHAPTER 5

Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces, page 37](#)
- [Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces, page 41](#)
- [Verifying the Interface Configuration, page 46](#)

Information About Access and Trunk Interfaces

Understanding Access and Trunk Interfaces

Ethernet interfaces can be configured either as access ports or a trunk ports, as follows:

- An access port can have only one VLAN configured on the interface; it can carry traffic for only one VLAN.
- A trunk port can have two or more VLANs configured on the interface; it can carry traffic for several VLANs simultaneously.

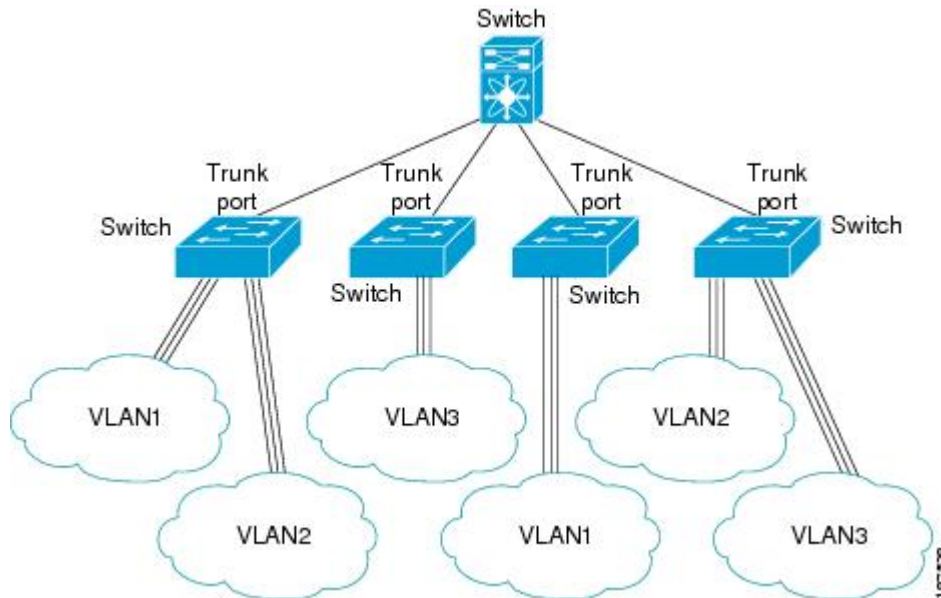


Note

Cisco NX-OS supports only IEEE 802.1Q-type VLAN trunk encapsulation.

The following figure shows how you can use trunk ports in the network. The trunk port carries traffic for two or more VLANs.

Figure 4: Devices in a Trunking Environment



In order to correctly deliver the traffic on a trunk port with several VLANs, the device uses the IEEE 802.1Q encapsulation or tagging method.

To optimize the performance on access ports, you can configure the port as a host port. Once the port is configured as a host port, it is automatically set as an access port, and channel grouping is disabled. Use the host designation to decrease the time it takes the designated port to begin to forward packets.



Note

Only an end station can be set as a host port; you will receive an error message if you attempt to configure other ports as hosts.

If an access port receives a packet with an 802.1Q tag in the header other than the access VLAN value, that port drops the packet without learning its MAC source address.



Note

An Ethernet interface can function as either an access port or a trunk port; it cannot function as both port types simultaneously.

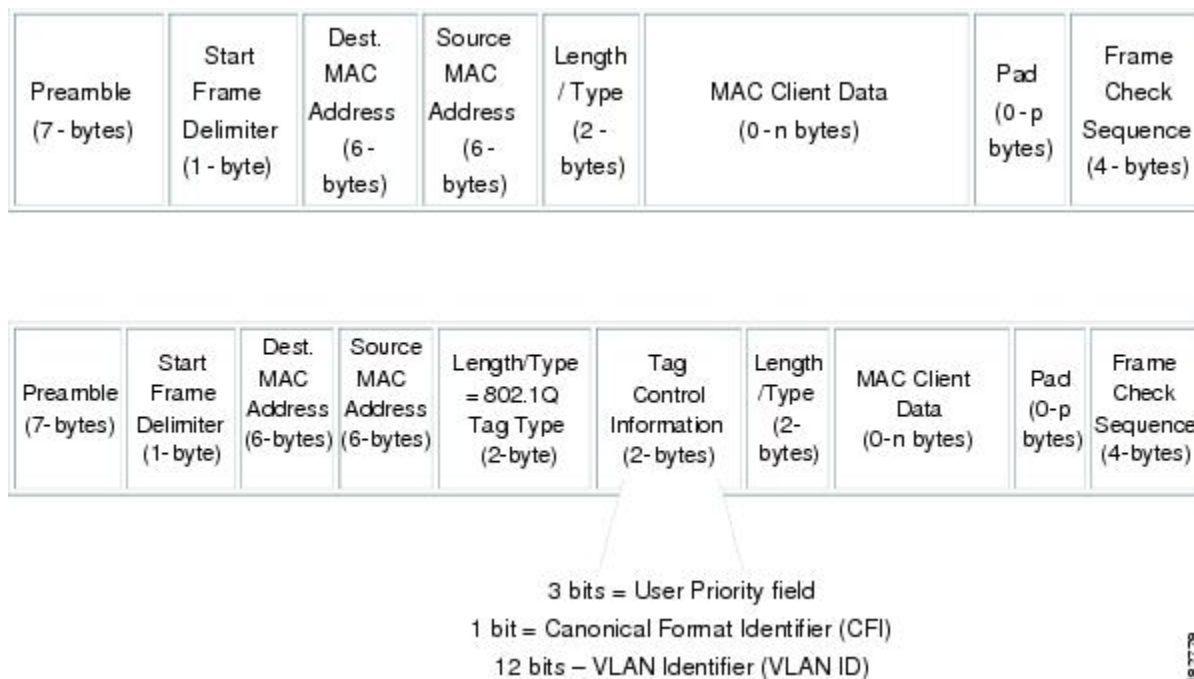
Understanding IEEE 802.1Q Encapsulation

A trunk is a point-to-point link between the device and another networking device. Trunks carry the traffic of multiple VLANs over a single link and allow you to extend VLANs across an entire network.

To correctly deliver the traffic on a trunk port with several VLANs, the device uses the IEEE 802.1Q encapsulation (tagging) method. This tag carries information about the specific VLAN to which the frame

and packet belong. This method allows packets that are encapsulated for several different VLANs to traverse the same port and maintain traffic separation between the VLANs. The encapsulated VLAN tag also allows the trunk to move traffic end-to-end through the network on the same VLAN.

Figure 5: Header Without and With 802.1Q Tag Included



Understanding Access VLANs

When you configure a port in access mode, you can specify which VLAN will carry the traffic for that interface. If you do not configure the VLAN for a port in access mode, or an access port, the interface carries traffic for the default VLAN (VLAN1).

You can change the access port membership in a VLAN by specifying the new VLAN. You must create the VLAN before you can assign it as an access VLAN for an access port. If you change the access VLAN on an access port to a VLAN that is not yet created, the system will shut that access port down.



Note

If you change the VLAN on an access port or a trunk port it will flap the interface. However, if the port is part of a vPC, then first change the native VLAN on the secondary vPC, and then to primary vPC.

If an access port receives a packet with an 802.1Q tag in the header other than the access VLAN value, that port drops the packet without learning its MAC source address.



Note

If you assign an access VLAN that is also a primary VLAN for a private VLAN, all access ports with that access VLAN will also receive all the broadcast traffic for the primary VLAN in the private VLAN mode.

Understanding the Native VLAN ID for Trunk Ports

A trunk port can carry untagged packets simultaneously with the 802.1Q tagged packets. When you assign a default port VLAN ID to the trunk port, all untagged traffic travels on the default port VLAN ID for the trunk port, and all untagged traffic is assumed to belong to this VLAN. This VLAN is referred to as the native VLAN ID for a trunk port. The native VLAN ID is the VLAN that carries untagged traffic on trunk ports.

The trunk port sends an egressing packet with a VLAN that is equal to the default port VLAN ID as untagged; all the other egressing packets are tagged by the trunk port. If you do not configure a native VLAN ID, the trunk port uses the default VLAN.

**Note**

Native VLAN ID numbers *must* match on both ends of the trunk.

Understanding Allowed VLANs

By default, a trunk port sends traffic to and receives traffic from all VLANs. All VLAN IDs are allowed on each trunk. However, you can remove VLANs from this inclusive list to prevent traffic from the specified VLANs from passing over the trunk. You can add any specific VLANs later that you may want the trunk to carry traffic for back to the list.

To partition the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) topology for the default VLAN, you can remove VLAN1 from the list of allowed VLANs. Otherwise, VLAN1, which is enabled on all ports by default, will have a very big STP topology, which can result in problems during STP convergence. When you remove VLAN1, all data traffic for VLAN1 on this port is blocked, but the control traffic continues to move on the port.

Understanding Native 802.1Q VLANs

To provide additional security for traffic passing through an 802.1Q trunk port, the **vlan dot1q tag native** command was introduced. This feature provides a means to ensure that all packets going out of a 802.1Q trunk port are tagged and to prevent reception of untagged packets on the 802.1Q trunk port.

Without this feature, all tagged ingress frames received on a 802.1Q trunk port are accepted as long as they fall inside the allowed VLAN list and their tags are preserved. Untagged frames are tagged with the native VLAN ID of the trunk port before further processing. Only those egress frames whose VLAN tags are inside the allowed range for that 802.1Q trunk port are received. If the VLAN tag on a frame happens to match that of the native VLAN on the trunk port, the tag is stripped off and the frame is sent untagged.

This behavior could potentially be exploited to introduce "VLAN hopping" in which a hacker could try and have a frame jump to a different VLAN. It is also possible for traffic to become part of the native VLAN by sending untagged packets into an 802.1Q trunk port.

To address the above issues, the **vlan dot1q tag native** command performs the following functions:

- On the ingress side, all untagged data traffic is dropped.
- On the egress side, all traffic is tagged. If traffic belongs to native VLAN it is tagged with the native VLAN ID.

This feature is supported on all the directly connected Ethernet and Port Channel interfaces. It is also supported on all the host interface ports of any attached Fabric Extender (FEX).

**Note**

You can enable the **vlan dot1q tag native** command by entering the command in the global configuration mode.

Configuring Access and Trunk Interfaces

Configuring a LAN Interface as an Ethernet Access Port

You can configure an Ethernet interface as an access port. An access port transmits packets on only one, untagged VLAN. You specify which VLAN traffic that the interface carries. If you do not specify a VLAN for an access port, the interface carries traffic only on the default VLAN. The default VLAN is VLAN1.

The VLAN must exist before you can specify that VLAN as an access VLAN. The system shuts down an access port that is assigned to an access VLAN that does not exist.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *{{type slot/port} | {port-channel number}}*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode** *{access | trunk}*
4. switch(config-if)# **switchport access vlan** *vlan-id*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>{{type slot/port} {port-channel number}}</i>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode <i>{access trunk}</i>	Sets the interface as a nontrunking nontagged single-VLAN Ethernet interface. An access port can carry traffic in one VLAN only. By default, an access port carries traffic for VLAN1; to set the access port to carry traffic for a different VLAN, use the switchport access vlan command.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Specifies the VLAN for which this access port will carry traffic. If you do not enter this command, the access port carries traffic on VLAN1 only; use this command to change the VLAN for which the access port carries traffic.

This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet access port that carries traffic for a specific VLAN only:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-if)# switchport mode access
switch(config-if)# switchport access vlan 5
```

Configuring Access Host Ports

By using a switchport host, you can make an access port a spanning-tree edge port, and enable BPDU Filtering and BPDU Guard at the same time.

Before You Begin

Ensure that you are configuring the correct interface; it must be an interface that is connected to an end station.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport host**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport host	Sets the interface to spanning-tree port type edge, turns on BPDU Filtering and BPDU Guard. Note Apply this command only to switchports that connect to hosts.

This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet access host port with EtherChannel disabled:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-if)# switchport host
```

Configuring Trunk Ports

You can configure an Ethernet port as a trunk port; a trunk port transmits untagged packets for the native VLAN plus encapsulated, tagged, packets for multiple VLANs.

**Note**

Cisco NX-OS supports only 802.1Q encapsulation.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {*type slot/port* | **port-channel number**}
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport mode** {**access** | **trunk**}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface { <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel number }	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode { access trunk }	Sets the interface as an Ethernet trunk port. A trunk port can carry traffic in one or more VLANs on the same physical link (VLANs are based on the trunk-allowed VLANs list). By default, a trunk interface can carry traffic for all VLANs. To specify that only certain VLANs are allowed on the specified trunk, use the switchport trunk allowed vlan command.

This example shows how to set an interface as an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

Configuring the Native VLAN for 802.1Q Trunking Ports

If you do not configure this parameter, the trunk port uses the default VLAN as the native VLAN ID.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {*type slot/port* | **port-channel number**}
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport trunk native vlan** *vlan-id*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# interface { <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i> }	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Sets the native VLAN for the 802.1Q trunk. Valid values are from 1 to 4094, except those VLANs reserved for internal use. The default value is VLAN1.

This example shows how to set the native VLAN for an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 5
```

Configuring the Allowed VLANs for Trunking Ports

You can specify the IDs for the VLANs that are allowed on the specific trunk port.

Before you configure the allowed VLANs for the specified trunk ports, ensure that you are configuring the correct interfaces and that the interfaces are trunks.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {*type slot/port* | **port-channel** *number*}
3. switch(config-if)# **switchport trunk allowed vlan** {*vlan-list all* | **none** [**add** | **except** | **none** | **remove** {*vlan-list*}]}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface { <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i> }	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan { <i>vlan-list all</i> none [add except none remove { <i>vlan-list</i> }]}	<p>Sets allowed VLANs for the trunk interface. The default is to allow all VLANs on the trunk interface: 1 to 3967 and 4048 to 4094. VLANs 3968 to 4047 are the default VLANs reserved for internal use by default; this group of VLANs is configurable. By default, all VLANs are allowed on all trunk interfaces.</p> <p>Note You cannot add internally allocated VLANs as allowed VLANs on trunk ports. The system returns a message if you attempt to list an internally allocated VLAN as an allowed VLAN.</p>

This example shows how to add VLANs to the list of allowed VLANs on an Ethernet trunk port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/3
switch(config-if)# switchport trunk allow vlan 15-20
```

Configuring Native 802.1Q VLANs

Typically, you configure 802.1Q trunks with a native VLAN ID, which strips tagging from all packets on that VLAN. This configuration allows all untagged traffic and control traffic to transit the Cisco Nexus device. Packets that enter the switch with 802.1Q tags that match the native VLAN ID value are similarly stripped of tagging.

To maintain the tagging on the native VLAN and drop untagged traffic, enter the **vlan dot1q tag native** command. The switch will tag the traffic received on the native VLAN and admit only 802.1Q-tagged frames, dropping any untagged traffic, including untagged traffic in the native VLAN.

Control traffic continues to be accepted untagged on the native VLAN on a trunked port, even when the **vlan dot1q tag native** command is enabled.



Note

The **vlan dot1q tag native** command is enabled on global basis.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]**
4. (Optional) switch# **show vlan dot1q tag native**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]	Enables dot1q (IEEE 802.1Q) tagging for all native VLANs on all trunked ports on the Cisco Nexus device. By default, this feature is disabled.
Step 3	switch(config)# no vlan dot1q tag native [tx-only]	(Optional) Disables dot1q (IEEE 802.1Q) tagging for all native VLANs on all trunked ports on the switch.
Step 4	switch# show vlan dot1q tag native	(Optional) Displays the status of tagging on the native VLANs.

This example shows how to enable 802.1Q tagging on the switch:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan dot1q tag native
switch(config)# exit
switch# show vlan dot1q tag native
vlan dot1q native tag is enabled
```

Verifying the Interface Configuration

Use the following commands to display access and trunk interface configuration information.

Command	Purpose
switch# show interface	Displays the interface configuration
switch# show interface switchport	Displays information for all Ethernet interfaces, including access and trunk interfaces.
switch# show interface brief	Displays interface configuration information.



Configuring Enhanced Virtual Port Channels

This chapter contains the following sections:

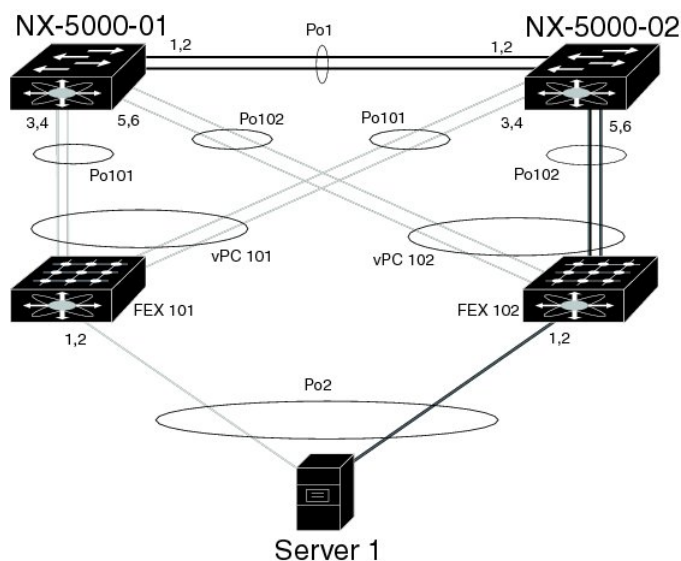
- [Information About Enhanced vPCs, page 48](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for Enhanced vPC, page 50](#)
- [Configuring Enhanced vPCs, page 50](#)
- [Verifying Enhanced vPCs, page 51](#)
- [Enhanced vPC Example Configuration, page 55](#)

Information About Enhanced vPCs

Enhanced Virtual Port Channels Overview

The virtual port channel (vPC) feature allows the dual homed connection of a host to two fabric extenders (FEXs) or a dual homed connection of a FEX to two switches. The enhanced vPC feature, or two-layer vPC, allows both dual homing topologies to be combined simultaneously, as shown in the following figure:

Figure 6: Dual Homing Topology



With enhanced vPCs, all available paths from the hosts to the FEXs and from the FEXs to the switches are active and carry Ethernet traffic, maximizing the available bandwidth and providing redundancy at both levels.

For information about vPCs, see [Configuring Virtual Port Channels](#).

Supported Platforms and Topologies

Supported Platforms

Enhanced vPC is supported on Cisco Nexus devices.

Any Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender can be used with Enhanced vPC.

Enhanced vPC is compatible with Layer 3 features on the switch.

Supported and Unsupported Topologies

Enhanced vPC supports the following topologies:

- A single homed server connected to a single FEX

- A dual homed server connected by a port channel to a single FEX
- A dual homed server connected by a port channel to a pair of FEXs

This topology allows connection to any two FEXs that are connected to the same pair of switches in a vPC domain. Static port channel and Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)-based port channel are supported.

- A dual homed server connected by Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) and port channel to a pair of FEXs
- A dual homed server connected by active/standby NIC teaming to a pair of FEXs

Enhanced vPC does not support the following topologies:

- A dual homed server connected to a pair of FEXs that connect to a single switch
Although this topology becomes a functioning system when one switch has failed, it is not recommended in normal operation.
- A multi-homed server connected by a port channel to more than two FEXs
This topology results in increased complexity with little benefit.
- You cannot have a link for non-vPC traffic in parallel with a vPC topology. This can cause errors with the traffic forwarding logic resulting in duplicate or missed packets.

Enhanced vPC Scalability

The scalability of enhanced vPC is similar to that of the dual homed FEX topology.

Each Cisco Nexus device supports up to 24 FEXs with Layer 2 configuration or Layer 3 configuration. In a dual homed FEX topology, such as that in enhanced vPC, each FEX is managed by two switches, so the pair together can support 24 FEXs.

Enhanced vPC Failure Response

The enhanced vPC topology provides a high level of resilience to the failure of system components and links as described in the following scenarios:

- Failure of One or More Port Channel Member Links
When one member link of a port channel fails, the traffic flow is moved to the remaining port channel member links. If all member links of a port channel fail, the traffic flow is redirected to the remaining port channel of the vPC.
- Failure of One FEX
When one FEX fails, the traffic flow from all dual homed hosts is moved to the remaining FEX.
- Failure of One Switch
When one switch fails, the traffic flow from all dual homed FEXs is moved to the remaining switch. Traffic from the hosts is unaffected.
- Failure of Both Uplinks from a Single FEX

When both uplinks from one FEX fails, the FEX shuts down its host ports, and the traffic flow from all dual homed hosts is moved to the other FEX.

- Failure of the vPC Peer Link

When the vPC secondary switch detects the failure of the peer link, it checks the status of the primary switch by the peer-keepalive link. If the primary switch is unresponsive, the secondary switch maintains all traffic flows as before. If the primary switch is active, the secondary switch shuts down its interfaces to the FEXs, and the traffic flow from all dual homed FEXs is moved to the primary switch. Ethernet traffic from the hosts is unaffected in either case.

If the secondary switch carries FCoE traffic and shuts down its interfaces to the FEXs, it also shuts down all virtual Fibre Channel (vFC) interfaces that are bound to the FEX host ports. In this case, the hosts must use multipathing to move SAN traffic to the remaining vFC interface.

- Failure of the vPC Peer-Keepalive Link

A failure of the vPC peer-keepalive link by itself does not affect the traffic flow.

Licensing Requirements for Enhanced vPC

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

Configuring Enhanced vPCs

Overview of Configuration Steps for Enhanced vPC

An enhanced vPC configuration consists of a combination of two standard vPC configurations: the dual homed connection of a host to two FEXs and the dual homed connection of a FEX to two switches. The required configuration tasks are listed here, but the detailed procedures for those two standard configurations are presented in the "Configuring Virtual Port Channels" chapter of this document.

To configure enhanced vPC, perform the following steps. Unless noted otherwise, the procedures for each step are given in [Configuring Virtual Port Channels](#).

**Note**

- In procedures where the configuration must be repeated on both switches, the configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch and have the configuration automatically synchronized to the peer switch. For more information about configuration synchronization, see the *Operations Guide* for your device.
- You cannot configure non-vPC interfaces across host ports on two different FEXs.

-
- Step 1** Enable the vPC and LACP features on each switch.
- Step 2** Create required VLANs on each switch.
- Step 3** Assign a vPC domain ID and configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on each switch.
- Step 4** Configure the vPC peer link on each switch.
- Step 5** Configure port channels from the first FEX to each switch.
- Step 6** Configure port channels from the second FEX to each switch.
- Step 7** If the enhanced vPC must accommodate FCoE traffic, associate the first FEX to one switch, and then associate the second FEX to the other switch.
See “Configuring FCoE over Enhanced vPC” in the *Fibre Channel over Ethernet Configuration Guide* for your device.
- Step 8** Configure a host port channel on each FEX.
-

Verifying Enhanced vPCs

Verifying the Enhanced vPC Configuration

Before bringing up a vPC, the two peer switches in the same vPC domain exchange configuration information to verify that both switches have compatible configurations for a vPC topology. Depending on the severity of the impact of possible mismatched configurations, some configuration parameters are considered as Type 1 consistency check parameters while others are considered as Type 2.

When a mismatch in Type 1 parameters is found, both peer switches suspend VLANs on the vPC ports. When a mismatch in Type 2 parameters is found, a warning syslog message is generated, but the vPC remains up and running.

**Note**

Enhanced vPCs do not support the graceful consistency check.

For enhanced vPCs, the consistency verification for global configuration parameters is the same as for a dual homed FEX topology, and is described in the documentation for dual homed FEX. In addition to the global consistency verification, enhanced vPCs require interface level verification using tasks described in this section.

Use the following commands to verify the enhanced vPC configuration and consistency:

Command	Purpose
switch# show feature	Displays whether vPC is enabled.
switch# show running-config vpc	Displays running configuration information for vPCs.
switch# show vpc brief	Displays brief information on the vPCs.
switch(config)# show vpc consistency-parameters global	Displays the status of global vPC parameters that must be consistent across all vPC interfaces.
switch(config)# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel <i>channel-number</i>	Displays the status of specific port channels that must be consistent across vPC devices.

For detailed information about the fields in the output of these commands, see the command reference for your device.

Verifying the Consistency of Port Channel Numbers

For enhanced vPCs, both switches must use the same port channel number for the dual homed connection to a FEX. If different port channel numbers are used, the port channel and its member ports are suspended on both switches.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show running-config interface** *type/slot[, type/slot[, ...]]*
2. **show interface** *type/slot*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	show running-config interface <i>type/slot[, type/slot[, ...]]</i> Example: switch-1# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1	Displays the configuration of the specified list of port channel member ports. Enter this command on both peer switches and compare the reported channel-group numbers to verify that they match between switches.
Step 2	show interface <i>type/slot</i> Example: switch-1# show interface Ethernet110/1/1	Displays the status and configuration of the specified port channel member port. Enter this command on both peer switches and verify the status of the ports.

This example shows how to verify the consistency of the port channel numbering between the two switches. In this example, the port channel numbering is inconsistent and the member ports are suspended:

```
switch-1# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1
!Time: Sun Aug 28 03:38:23 2011

version 5.1(3)N1(1)

interface Ethernet110/1/1
channel-group 102

interface Ethernet111/1/1
channel-group 102

switch-2# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1, Ethernet111/1/1
!Time: Sun Aug 28 03:38:23 2011

version 5.1(3)N1(1)

interface Ethernet110/1/1
channel-group 101

interface Ethernet111/1/1
channel-group 101

switch-1# show interface Ethernet110/1/1
Ethernet110/1/1 is down (suspended by vpc)
  Hardware: 100/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2402 (bia 7081.0500.2402)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
  [...]

switch-2# show interface Ethernet110/1/1
Ethernet110/1/1 is down (suspended by vpc)
  Hardware: 100/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2402 (bia 7081.0500.2402)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
  [...]
```

Verifying Common Port Channel Members

The port channel from a FEX to the switch pair is up and operational when there is at least one common port channel member between the two switches. Any FEX interfaces that are assigned to the port channel only on one switch will be suspended.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show port-channel summary**
2. (Optional) **show interface *type/slot***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	show port-channel summary Example: switch-1# show port-channel summary	Displays a summary of the port channel interfaces.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	show interface <i>type/slot</i> Example: switch-1# show interface ethernet 111/1/3	(Optional) Displays the status and configuration of the specified interface.

This example shows how to verify the common member ports of the vPC. In this example, the vPC is configured with one port channel member that is not common to both switches. That member port is shown as shut down, and further investigation shows that the member is suspended by the vPC. In this part of the session, the port channel is configured on each switch, with an extra port on the first switch:

```
switch-1(config)# interface ethernet 110/1/3, ethernet 111/1/3
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 101
switch-1(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20

switch-2(config)# interface ethernet 110/1/3
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 101
switch-2(config-if)# switchport access vlan 20
```

In this part of the session, the extra port is shown to be in the down state, and a display of the port details shows that the port is suspended by the vPC:

```
switch-1# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down          P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual    H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended     r - Module-removed
        S - Switched      R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met

-----
Group Port-      Type      Protocol  Member Ports
Channel
-----
1      Po1(SU)     Eth       LACP      Eth1/1(P)   Eth1/2(P)
[...]
101    Po101(SU)   Eth       NONE      Eth110/1/3(P)  Eth111/1/3(D)
```

```
switch-1# show interface ethernet 111/1/3
Ethernet111/1/3 is down (suspended by vpc)
  Hardware: 100/1000 Ethernet, address: 7081.0500.2582 (bia 7081.0500.2582)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit, DLY 10 usec
  reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
```

Verifying Interface Level Consistency for Enhanced vPCs

For enhanced vPCs, you must ensure consistency of the port mode and the shared VLAN in the port channel interface configuration.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **show vpc consistency-parameters port-channel** *channel-number*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	show vpc consistency-parameters port-channel <i>channel-number</i> Example: switch# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel 101 switch(config)#	For the specified port channel, displays the status information that must be consistent across vPC devices.

This example shows how to display a comparison of the interface configuration across two peers for a vPC. In this case, VLAN 10 is allowed on both peers, but the port mode is mismatched, causing the VLAN to be suspended.

```
switch-1# show vpc consistency-parameters interface port-channel 101
```

Legend:

Type 1 : vPC will be suspended in case of mismatch

Name	Type	Local Value	Peer Value
-----	---	-----	-----
mode	1	on	on
Speed	1	1000 Mb/s	1000 Mb/s
Duplex	1	full	full
Port Mode	1	access	trunk
MTU	1	1500	1500
Admin port mode	1		
Shut Lan	1	No	No
vPC+ Switch-id	1	3000	3000
Allowed VLANs	-	10	1-57 , 61-3967, 4048-4093
Local suspended VLANs	-	10	-

Enhanced vPC Example Configuration

The following example shows the complete configuration procedure using the topology of the enhanced vPC figure in this chapter. In the topology figure, the number pairs beside each port channel link represent the interface port numbers. For example, the switch link labeled with the numbers "3,4" represents interfaces eth1/3 and eth1/4 on the switch.



Note

In procedures where the configuration must be repeated on both switches, the configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch and have the configuration automatically synchronized to the peer switch. For more information about configuration synchronization, see the operations guide for your device.

Before You Begin

Ensure that the Cisco Nexus Fabric Extenders FEX101 and FEX102 are attached and online.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. Enable the vPC and LACP features on each switch.
2. Create required VLANs on each switch.
3. Assign a vPC domain ID and configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on each switch.
4. Configure the vPC peer link on each switch.
5. Configure port channels from the first FEX to each switch.
6. Configure port channels from the second FEX to each switch.
7. Configure a host port channel on each FEX.

DETAILED STEPS

Step 1 Enable the vPC and LACP features on each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# feature vpc
switch-1(config)# feature lacp

switch-2(config)# feature vpc
switch-2(config)# feature lacp
```

Step 2 Create required VLANs on each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# vlan 10-20

switch-2(config)# vlan 10-20
```

Step 3 Assign a vPC domain ID and configure the vPC peer-keepalive link on each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# vpc domain 123
switch-1(config-vpc)# peer-keepalive destination 172.25.182.100

switch-2(config)# vpc domain 123
switch-2(config-vpc)# peer-keepalive destination 172.25.182.99
```

Note When you configure each switch, use the IP address of the peer switch as the peer-keepalive destination.

Step 4 Configure the vPC peer link on each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# interface eth1/1-2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# interface Po1
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch-1(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-20
switch-1(config-if)# vpc peer-link

switch-2(config)# interface eth1/1-2
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# interface Po1
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch-2(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-20
```



```
switch-2(config-if)# vpc peer-link
```

Step 5 Configure port channels from the first FEX to each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# fex 101
switch-1(config-fex)# interface eth1/3-4
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-1(config-if)# interface po101
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-1(config-if)# vpc 101
switch-1(config-if)# fex associate 101

switch-2(config)# fex 101
switch-2(config-fex)# interface eth1/3-4
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 101
switch-2(config-if)# interface po101
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-2(config-if)# vpc 101
switch-2(config-if)# fex associate 101
```

Step 6 Configure port channels from the second FEX to each switch.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# fex 102
switch-1(config-fex)# interface eth1/5-6
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 102
switch-1(config-if)# interface po102
switch-1(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-1(config-if)# vpc 102
switch-1(config-if)# fex associate 102

switch-2(config)# fex 102
switch-2(config-fex)# interface eth1/5-6
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 102
switch-2(config-if)# interface po102
switch-2(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch-2(config-if)# vpc 102
switch-2(config-if)# fex associate 102
```

Step 7 Configure a host port channel on each FEX.

Example:

```
switch-1(config)# interface eth101/1/1, eth101/1/2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# interface eth102/1/1, eth102/1/2
switch-1(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-1(config-if)# int po2
switch-1(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10

switch-2(config)# interface eth101/1/1, eth101/1/2
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# interface eth102/1/1, eth102/1/2
switch-2(config-if)# channel-group 2 mode active
switch-2(config-if)# int po2
switch-2(config-if)# switchport access vlan 10
```




Configuring Rapid PVST+

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Rapid PVST+, page 59](#)
- [Configuring Rapid PVST+, page 74](#)
- [Verifying the Rapid PVST+ Configuration, page 84](#)

Information About Rapid PVST+

The Rapid PVST+ protocol is the IEEE 802.1w standard, Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP), implemented on a per VLAN basis. Rapid PVST+ interoperates with the IEEE 802.1D standard, which mandates a single STP instance for all VLANs, rather than per VLAN.

Rapid PVST+ is enabled by default on the default VLAN (VLAN1) and on all newly created VLANs in the software. Rapid PVST+ interoperates with switches that run legacy IEEE 802.1D STP.

RSTP is an improvement on the original STP standard, 802.1D, which allows faster convergence.



Note

Spanning tree is used to refer to IEEE 802.1w and IEEE 802.1s. If the text is discussing the IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol, 802.1D is stated specifically.

Understanding STP

STP Overview

For an Ethernet network to function properly, only one active path can exist between any two stations.

When you create fault-tolerant internetworks, you must have a loop-free path between all nodes in a network. The STP algorithm calculates the best loop-free path throughout a switched network. LAN ports send and receive STP frames, which are called Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs), at regular intervals. Switches do not forward these frames but use the frames to construct a loop-free path.

Multiple active paths between end stations cause loops in the network. If a loop exists in the network, end stations might receive duplicate messages and switches might learn end station MAC addresses on multiple LAN ports. These conditions result in a broadcast storm, which creates an unstable network.

STP defines a tree with a root bridge and a loop-free path from the root to all switches in the network. STP forces redundant data paths into a blocked state. If a network segment in the spanning tree fails and a redundant path exists, the STP algorithm recalculates the spanning tree topology and activates the blocked path.

When two LAN ports on a switch are part of a loop, the STP port priority and port path cost setting determine which port on the switch is put in the forwarding state and which port is put in the blocking state.

Understanding How a Topology is Created

All switches in an extended LAN that participate in a spanning tree gather information about other switches in the network by exchanging of BPDUs. This exchange of BPDUs results in the following actions:

- The system elects a unique root switch for the spanning tree network topology.
- The system elects a designated switch for each LAN segment.
- The system eliminates any loops in the switched network by placing redundant interfaces in a backup state; all paths that are not needed to reach the root switch from anywhere in the switched network are placed in an STP-blocked state.

The topology on an active switched network is determined by the following:

- The unique switch identifier Media Access Control (MAC) address of the switch that is associated with each switch
- The path cost to the root that is associated with each interface
- The port identifier that is associated with each interface

In a switched network, the root switch is the logical center of the spanning tree topology. STP uses BPDUs to elect the root switch and root port for the switched network, as well as the root port and designated port for each switched segment.

Understanding the Bridge ID

Each VLAN on each switch has a unique 64-bit bridge ID that consists of a bridge priority value, an extended system ID (IEEE 802.1t), and an STP MAC address allocation.

Bridge Priority Value

The bridge priority is a 4-bit value when the extended system ID is enabled.



Note

In Cisco NX-OS, the extended system ID is always enabled; you cannot disable the extended system ID.

Extended System ID

A 12-bit extended system ID field is part of the bridge ID.

Figure 7: Bridge ID with Extended System ID



The switches always use the 12-bit extended system ID.

Combined with the bridge ID, the system ID extension functions as the unique identifier for a VLAN.

Table 3: Bridge Priority Value and Extended System ID with the Extended System ID Enabled

Bridge Priority Value				Extended System ID (Set Equal to the VLAN ID)											
Bit 16	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1
32768	16384	8192	4096	2048	1024	512	256	128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1

STP MAC Address Allocation



Note

Extended system ID and MAC address reduction is always enabled on the software.

With MAC address reduction enabled on any switch, you should also enable MAC address reduction on all other connected switches to avoid undesirable root bridge election and spanning tree topology issues.

When MAC address reduction is enabled, the root bridge priority becomes a multiple of 4096 plus the VLAN ID. You can only specify a switch bridge ID (used by the spanning tree algorithm to determine the identity of the root bridge, the lowest being preferred) as a multiple of 4096. Only the following values are possible:

- 0
- 4096
- 8192
- 12288
- 16384
- 20480
- 24576
- 28672
- 32768

- 36864
- 40960
- 45056
- 49152
- 53248
- 57344
- 61440

STP uses the extended system ID plus a MAC address to make the bridge ID unique for each VLAN.


Note

If another bridge in the same spanning tree domain does not run the MAC address reduction feature, it could achieve root bridge ownership because its bridge ID may fall between the values specified by the MAC address reduction feature.

Understanding BPDUs

Switches transmit bridge protocol data units (BPDUs) throughout the STP instance. Each switch sends configuration BPDUs to communicate and compute the spanning tree topology. Each configuration BPDU contains the following minimal information:

- The unique bridge ID of the switch that the transmitting switch determines is the root bridge
- The STP path cost to the root
- The bridge ID of the transmitting bridge
- Message age
- The identifier of the transmitting port
- Values for the hello, forward delay, and max-age protocol timer
- Additional information for STP extension protocols

When a switch transmits a Rapid PVST+ BPDU frame, all switches connected to the VLAN on which the frame is transmitted receive the BPDU. When a switch receives a BPDU, it does not forward the frame but instead uses the information in the frame to calculate a BPDU, and, if the topology changes, initiate a BPDU transmission.

A BPDU exchange results in the following:

- One switch is elected as the root bridge.
- The shortest distance to the root bridge is calculated for each switch based on the path cost.
- A designated bridge for each LAN segment is selected. This is the switch closest to the root bridge through which frames are forwarded to the root.
- A root port is selected. This is the port providing the best path from the bridge to the root bridge.
- Ports included in the spanning tree are selected.

Election of the Root Bridge

For each VLAN, the switch with the lowest numerical value of the bridge ID is elected as the root bridge. If all switches are configured with the default priority (32768), the switch with the lowest MAC address in the VLAN becomes the root bridge. The bridge priority value occupies the most significant bits of the bridge ID.

When you change the bridge priority value, you change the probability that the switch will be elected as the root bridge. Configuring a lower value increases the probability; a higher value decreases the probability.

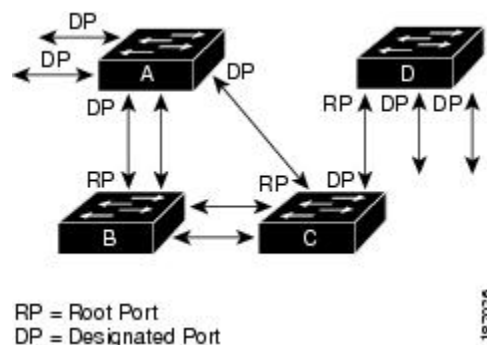
The STP root bridge is the logical center of each spanning tree topology in a network. All paths that are not needed to reach the root bridge from anywhere in the network are placed in STP blocking mode.

BPDUs contain information about the transmitting bridge and its ports, including bridge and MAC addresses, bridge priority, port priority, and path cost. STP uses this information to elect the root bridge for the STP instance, to elect the root port leading to the root bridge, and to determine the designated port for each segment.

Creating the Spanning Tree Topology

In the following figure, Switch A is elected as the root bridge because the bridge priority of all the switches is set to the default (32768) and Switch A has the lowest MAC address. However, due to traffic patterns, the number of forwarding ports, or link types, Switch A might not be the ideal root bridge. By increasing the priority (lowering the numerical value) of the ideal switch so that it becomes the root bridge, you force an STP recalculation to form a new spanning tree topology with the ideal switch as the root.

Figure 8: Spanning Tree Topology



When the spanning tree topology is calculated based on default parameters, the path between source and destination end stations in a switched network might not be ideal. For instance, connecting higher-speed links to a port that has a higher number than the current root port can cause a root-port change. The goal is to make the fastest link the root port.

For example, assume that one port on Switch B is a fiber-optic link, and another port on Switch B (an unshielded twisted-pair [UTP] link) is the root port. Network traffic might be more efficient over the high-speed fiber-optic link. By changing the STP port priority on the fiber-optic port to a higher priority (lower numerical value) than the root port, the fiber-optic port becomes the new root port.

Understanding Rapid PVST+

Rapid PVST+ Overview

Rapid PVST+ is the IEEE 802.1w (RSTP) standard implemented per VLAN. A single instance of STP runs on each configured VLAN (if you do not manually disable STP). Each Rapid PVST+ instance on a VLAN has a single root switch. You can enable and disable STP on a per-VLAN basis when you are running Rapid PVST+.


Note

Rapid PVST+ is the default STP mode for the switch.

Rapid PVST+ uses point-to-point wiring to provide rapid convergence of the spanning tree. The spanning tree reconfiguration can occur in less than 1 second with Rapid PVST+ (in contrast to 50 seconds with the default settings in the 802.1D STP).


Note

Rapid PVST+ supports one STP instance for each VLAN.

Using Rapid PVST+, STP convergence occurs rapidly. Each designated or root port in the STP sends out a BPDU every 2 seconds by default. On a designated or root port in the topology, if hello messages are missed three consecutive times, or if the maximum age expires, the port immediately flushes all protocol information in the table. A port considers that it loses connectivity to its direct neighbor root or designated port if it misses three BPDUs or if the maximum age expires. This rapid aging of the protocol information allows quick failure detection. The switch automatically checks the PVID.

Rapid PVST+ provides for rapid recovery of connectivity following the failure of a network device, a switch port, or a LAN. It provides rapid convergence for edge ports, new root ports, and ports connected through point-to-point links as follows:

- **Edge ports**—When you configure a port as an edge port on an RSTP switch, the edge port immediately transitions to the forwarding state. (This immediate transition was previously a Cisco-proprietary feature named PortFast.) You should only configure on ports that connect to a single end station as edge ports. Edge ports do not generate topology changes when the link changes.

Enter the **spanning-tree port type** interface configuration command to configure a port as an STP edge port.


Note

We recommend that you configure all ports connected to a host as edge ports.

- **Root ports**—If Rapid PVST+ selects a new root port, it blocks the old root port and immediately transitions the new root port to the forwarding state.
- **Point-to-point links**—If you connect a port to another port through a point-to-point link and the local port becomes a designated port, it negotiates a rapid transition with the other port by using the proposal-agreement handshake to ensure a loop-free topology.

Rapid PVST+ achieves rapid transition to the forwarding state only on edge ports and point-to-point links. Although the link type is configurable, the system automatically derives the link type information from the

duplex setting of the port. Full-duplex ports are assumed to be point-to-point ports, while half-duplex ports are assumed to be shared ports.

Edge ports do not generate topology changes, but all other designated and root ports generate a topology change (TC) BPDU when they either fail to receive three consecutive BPDUs from the directly connected neighbor or the maximum age times out. At this point, the designated or root port sends out a BPDU with the TC flag set. The BPDUs continue to set the TC flag as long as the TC While timer runs on that port. The value of the TC While timer is the value set for the hello time plus 1 second. The initial detector of the topology change immediately floods this information throughout the entire topology.

When Rapid PVST+ detects a topology change, the protocol does the following:

- Starts the TC While timer with a value equal to twice the hello time for all the non-edge root and designated ports, if necessary.
- Flushes the MAC addresses associated with all these ports.

The topology change notification floods quickly across the entire topology. The system flushes dynamic entries immediately on a per-port basis when it receives a topology change.



Note

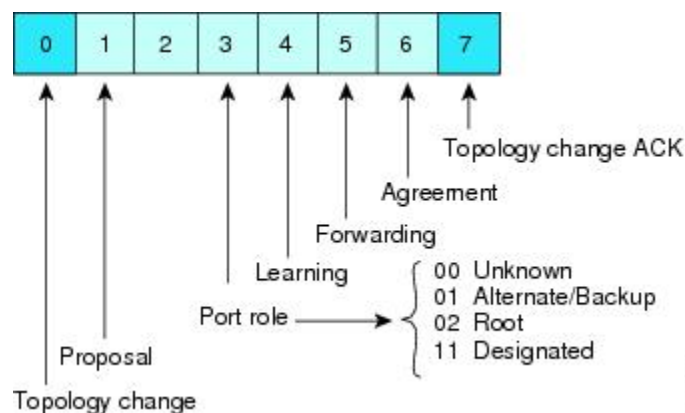
The TCA flag is used only when the switch is interacting with switches that are running legacy 802.1D STP.

The proposal and agreement sequence then quickly propagates toward the edge of the network and quickly restores connectivity after a topology change.

Rapid PVST+ BPDUs

Rapid PVST+ and 802.1w use all six bits of the flag byte to add the role and state of the port that originates the BPDU and the proposal and agreement handshake. The following figure shows the use of the BPDU flags in Rapid PVST+.

Figure 9: Rapid PVST+ Flag Byte in BPDU

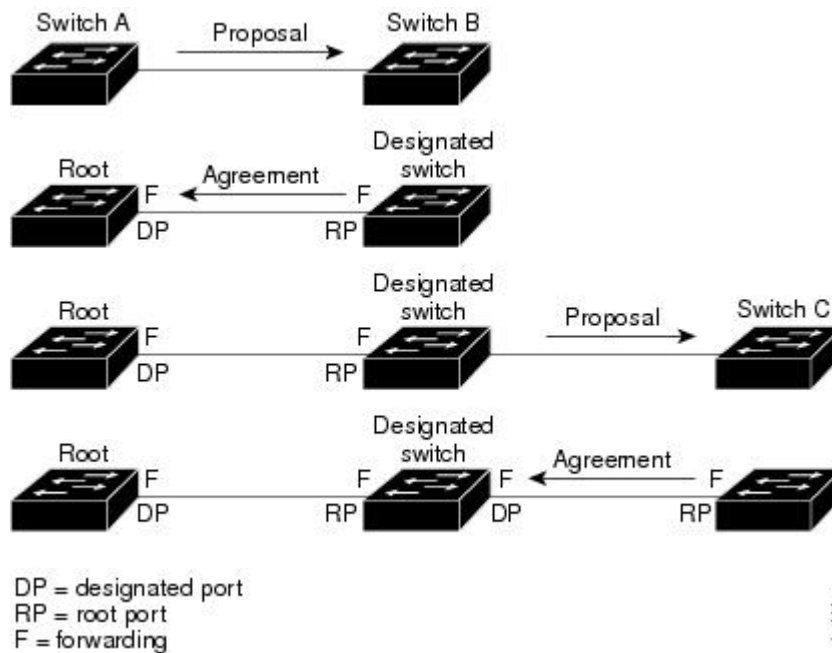


Another important change is that the Rapid PVST+ BPDU is type 2, version 2, which makes it possible for the switch to detect connected legacy (802.1D) bridges. The BPDU for 802.1D is version 0.

Proposal and Agreement Handshake

As shown in the following figure, Switch A is connected to Switch B through a point-to-point link, and all of the ports are in the blocking state. Assume that the priority of Switch A is a smaller numerical value than the priority of Switch B.

Figure 10: Proposal and Agreement Handshaking for Rapid Convergence



Switch A sends a proposal message (a configuration BPDU with the proposal flag set) to Switch B, proposing itself as the designated switch.

After receiving the proposal message, Switch B selects as its new root port the port from which the proposal message was received, forces all non-edge ports to the blocking state, and sends an agreement message (a BPDU with the agreement flag set) through its new root port.

After receiving the agreement message from Switch B, Switch A also immediately transitions its designated port to the forwarding state. No loops in the network can form because Switch B blocked all of its non-edge ports and because there is a point-to-point link between Switches A and B.

When Switch C connects to Switch B, a similar set of handshaking messages are exchanged. Switch C selects the port connected to Switch B as its root port, and both ends of the link immediately transition to the forwarding state. With each iteration of this handshaking process, one more network device joins the active topology. As the network converges, this proposal-agreement handshaking progresses from the root toward the leaves of the spanning tree.

The switch learns the link type from the port duplex mode: a full-duplex port is considered to have a point-to-point connection and a half-duplex port is considered to have a shared connection. You can override the default setting that is controlled by the duplex setting by entering the **spanning-tree link-type** interface configuration command.

This proposal/agreement handshake is initiated only when a non-edge port moves from the blocking to the forwarding state. The handshaking process then proliferates step-by-step throughout the topology.

Protocol Timers

The following table describes the protocol timers that affect the Rapid PVST+ performance.

Table 4: Rapid PVST+ Protocol Timers

Variable	Description
Hello timer	Determines how often each switch broadcasts BPDUs to other switches. The default is 2 seconds, and the range is from 1 to 10.
Forward delay timer	Determines how long each of the listening and learning states last before the port begins forwarding. This timer is generally not used by the protocol but is used as a backup. The default is 15 seconds, and the range is from 4 to 30 seconds.
Maximum age timer	Determines the amount of time protocol information received on an port is stored by the switch. This timer is generally not used by the protocol, but it is used when interoperating with 802.1D spanning tree. The default is 20 seconds; the range is from 6 to 40 seconds.

Port Roles

Rapid PVST+ provides rapid convergence of the spanning tree by assigning port roles and learning the active topology. Rapid PVST+ builds upon the 802.1D STP to select the switch with the highest priority (lowest numerical priority value) as the root bridge. Rapid PVST+ then assigns one of these port roles to individual ports:

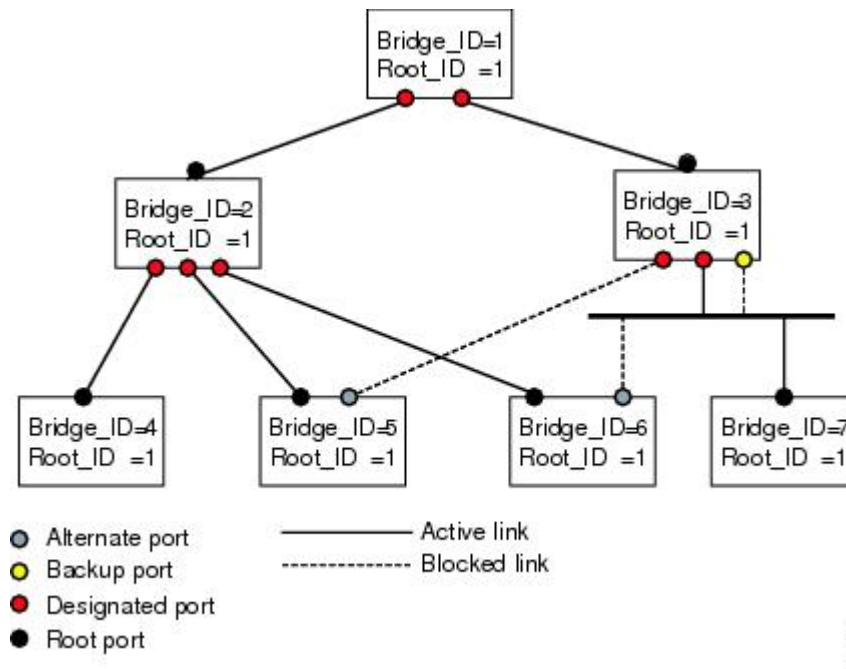
- Root port—Provides the best path (lowest cost) when the switch forwards packets to the root bridge.
- Designated port—Connects to the designated switch, which incurs the lowest path cost when forwarding packets from that LAN to the root bridge. The port through which the designated switch is attached to the LAN is called the designated port.
- Alternate port—Offers an alternate path toward the root bridge to the path provided by the current root port. An alternate port provides a path to another switch in the topology.
- Backup port—Acts as a backup for the path provided by a designated port toward the leaves of the spanning tree. A backup port can exist only when two ports are connected in a loopback by a point-to-point link or when a switch has two or more connections to a shared LAN segment. A backup port provides another path in the topology to the switch.
- Disabled port—Has no role within the operation of the spanning tree.

In a stable topology with consistent port roles throughout the network, Rapid PVST+ ensures that every root port and designated port immediately transition to the forwarding state while all alternate and backup ports

are always in the blocking state. Designated ports start in the blocking state. The port state controls the operation of the forwarding and learning processes.

A port with the root or a designated port role is included in the active topology. A port with the alternate or backup port role is excluded from the active topology (see the following figure).

Figure 11: Sample Topology Demonstrating Port Roles



Port States

Rapid PVST+ Port State Overview

Propagation delays can occur when protocol information passes through a switched LAN. As a result, topology changes can take place at different times and at different places in a switched network. When a LAN port transitions directly from nonparticipation in the spanning tree topology to the forwarding state, it can create temporary data loops. Ports must wait for new topology information to propagate through the switched LAN before starting to forward frames.

Each LAN port on a software using Rapid PVST+ or MST exists in one of the following four states:

- Blocking—The LAN port does not participate in frame forwarding.
- Learning—The LAN port prepares to participate in frame forwarding.
- Forwarding—The LAN port forwards frames.
- Disabled—The LAN port does not participate in STP and is not forwarding frames.

When you enable Rapid PVST+, every port in the software, VLAN, and network goes through the blocking state and the transitory states of learning at power up. If properly configured, each LAN port stabilizes to the forwarding or blocking state.

When the STP algorithm places a LAN port in the forwarding state, the following process occurs:

- The LAN port is put into the blocking state while it waits for protocol information that suggests it should go to the learning state.
- The LAN port waits for the forward delay timer to expire, moves the LAN port to the learning state, and restarts the forward delay timer.
- In the learning state, the LAN port continues to block frame forwarding as it learns the end station location information for the forwarding database.
- The LAN port waits for the forward delay timer to expire and then moves the LAN port to the forwarding state, where both learning and frame forwarding are enabled.

Blocking State

A LAN port in the blocking state does not participate in frame forwarding.

A LAN port in the blocking state performs as follows:

- Discards frames received from the attached segment.
- Discards frames switched from another port for forwarding.
- Does not incorporate the end station location into its address database. (There is no learning on a blocking LAN port, so there is no address database update.)
- Receives BPDUs and directs them to the system module.
- Receives, processes, and transmits BPDUs received from the system module.
- Receives and responds to network management messages.

Learning State

A LAN port in the learning state prepares to participate in frame forwarding by learning the MAC addresses for the frames. The LAN port enters the learning state from the blocking state.

A LAN port in the learning state performs as follows:

- Discards frames received from the attached segment.
- Discards frames switched from another port for forwarding.
- Incorporates the end station location into its address database.
- Receives BPDUs and directs them to the system module.
- Receives, processes, and transmits BPDUs received from the system module.
- Receives and responds to network management messages.

Forwarding State

A LAN port in the forwarding state forwards frames. The LAN port enters the forwarding state from the learning state.

A LAN port in the forwarding state performs as follows:

- Forwards frames received from the attached segment.
- Forwards frames switched from another port for forwarding.
- Incorporates the end station location information into its address database.
- Receives BPDUs and directs them to the system module.
- Processes BPDUs received from the system module.
- Receives and responds to network management messages.

Disabled State

A LAN port in the disabled state does not participate in frame forwarding or STP. A LAN port in the disabled state is virtually nonoperational.

A disabled LAN port performs as follows:

- Discards frames received from the attached segment.
- Discards frames switched from another port for forwarding.
- Does not incorporate the end station location into its address database. (There is no learning, so there is no address database update.)
- Does not receive BPDUs from neighbors.
- Does not receive BPDUs for transmission from the system module.

Summary of Port States

The following table lists the possible operational and Rapid PVST+ states for ports and the corresponding inclusion in the active topology.

Table 5: Port State Active Topology

Operational Status	Port State	Is Port Included in the Active Topology?
Enabled	Blocking	No
Enabled	Learning	Yes
Enabled	Forwarding	Yes
Disabled	Disabled	No

Synchronization of Port Roles

When the switch receives a proposal message on one of its ports and that port is selected as the new root port, Rapid PVST+ forces all other ports to synchronize with the new root information.

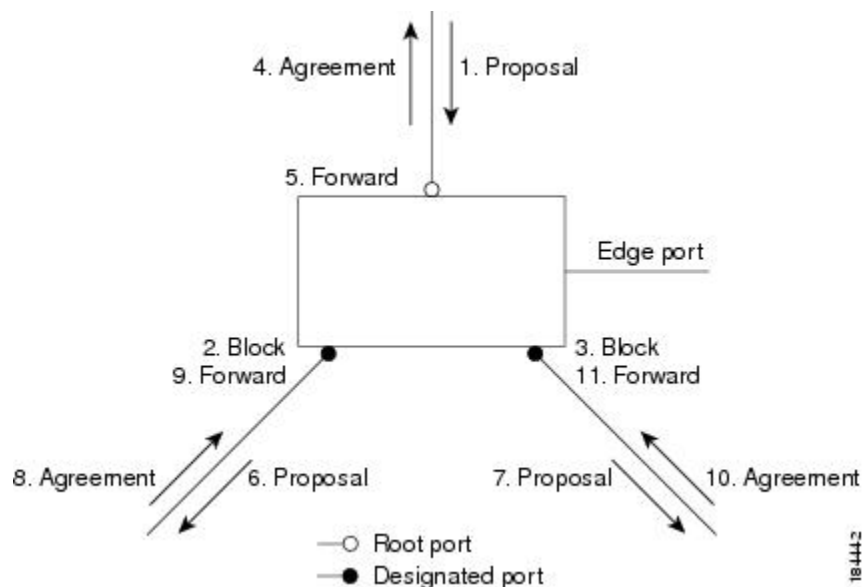
The switch is synchronized with superior root information received on the root port if all other ports are synchronized. An individual port on the switch is synchronized if either of the following applies:

- That port is in the blocking state.
- It is an edge port (a port configured to be at the edge of the network).

If a designated port is in the forwarding state and is not configured as an edge port, it transitions to the blocking state when the Rapid PVST+ forces it to synchronize with new root information. In general, when the Rapid PVST+ forces a port to synchronize with root information and the port does not satisfy any of the above conditions, its port state is set to blocking.

After ensuring that all of the ports are synchronized, the switch sends an agreement message to the designated switch that corresponds to its root port. When the switches connected by a point-to-point link are in agreement about their port roles, Rapid PVST+ immediately transitions the port states to the forwarding state. The sequence of events is shown in the following figure.

Figure 12: Sequence of Events During Rapid Convergence



Processing Superior BPDUs

A superior BPDUs is a BPDUs with root information (such as a lower switch ID or lower path cost) that is superior to what is currently stored for the port.

If a port receives a superior BPDUs, Rapid PVST+ triggers a reconfiguration. If the port is proposed and is selected as the new root port, Rapid PVST+ forces all the other ports to synchronize.

If the received BPDUs is a Rapid PVST+ BPDUs with the proposal flag set, the switch sends an agreement message after all of the other ports are synchronized. The new root port transitions to the forwarding state as soon as the previous port reaches the blocking state.

If the superior information received on the port causes the port to become a backup port or an alternate port, Rapid PVST+ sets the port to the blocking state and sends an agreement message. The designated port continues sending BPDUs with the proposal flag set until the forward-delay timer expires. At that time, the port transitions to the forwarding state.

Processing Inferior BPDU Information

An inferior BPDU is a BPDU with root information (such as a higher switch ID or higher path cost) that is inferior to what is currently stored for the port.

If a designated port receives an inferior BPDU, it immediately replies with its own information.

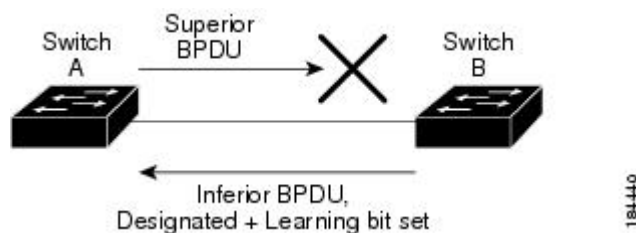
Spanning-Tree Dispute Mechanism

The software checks the consistency of the port role and state in the received BPDUs to detect unidirectional link failures that could cause bridging loops.

When a designated port detects a conflict, it keeps its role, but reverts to a discarding state because disrupting connectivity in case of inconsistency is preferable to opening a bridging loop.

The following figure illustrates a unidirectional link failure that typically creates a bridging loop. Switch A is the root bridge, and its BPDUs are lost on the link leading to Switch B. The 802.1w-standard BPDUs include the role and state of the sending port. With this information, Switch A can detect that Switch B does not react to the superior BPDUs it sends and that Switch B is the designated, not root port. As a result, Switch A blocks (or keeps blocking) its port, which prevents the bridging loop. The block is shown as an STP dispute.

Figure 13: Detecting Unidirectional Link Failure



Port Cost



Note

Rapid PVST+ uses the short (16-bit) path-cost method to calculate the cost by default. With the short path-cost method, you can assign any value in the range of 1 to 65535. However, you can configure the switch to use the long (32-bit) path-cost method, which allows you to assign any value in the range of 1 to 200,000,000. You configure the path-cost calculation method globally.

The STP port path-cost default value is determined from the media speed and path-cost calculation method of a LAN interface. If a loop occurs, STP considers the port cost when selecting a LAN interface to put into the forwarding state.

Table 6: Default Port Cost

Bandwidth	Short Path-Cost Method of Port Cost	Long Path-Cost Method of Port Cost
10 Mbps	100	2,000,000

Bandwidth	Short Path-Cost Method of Port Cost	Long Path-Cost Method of Port Cost
100 Mbps	19	200,000
1 Gigabit Ethernet	4	20,000
10 Gigabit Ethernet	2	2,000

You can assign lower cost values to LAN interfaces that you want STP to select first and higher cost values to LAN interfaces that you want STP to select last. If all LAN interfaces have the same cost value, STP puts the LAN interface with the lowest LAN interface number in the forwarding state and blocks other LAN interfaces.

On access ports, you assign the port cost by the port. On trunk ports, you assign the port cost by the VLAN; you can configure the same port cost to all the VLANs on a trunk port.

Port Priority

If a loop occurs and multiple ports have the same path cost, Rapid PVST+ considers the port priority when selecting which LAN port to put into the forwarding state. You can assign lower priority values to LAN ports that you want Rapid PVST+ to select first and higher priority values to LAN ports that you want Rapid PVST+ to select last.

If all LAN ports have the same priority value, Rapid PVST+ puts the LAN port with the lowest LAN port number in the forwarding state and blocks other LAN ports. The possible priority range is from 0 through 224 (the default is 128), configurable in increments of 32. The software uses the port priority value when the LAN port is configured as an access port and uses the VLAN port priority values when the LAN port is configured as a trunk port.

Rapid PVST+ and IEEE 802.1Q Trunks

In a network of Cisco switches connected through 802.1Q trunks, the switches maintain one instance of STP for each VLAN allowed on the trunks. However, non-Cisco 802.1Q switches maintain only one instance of STP for all VLANs allowed on the trunks.

When you connect a Cisco switch to a non-Cisco switch through an 802.1Q trunk, the Cisco switch combines the STP instance of the 802.1Q VLAN of the trunk with the STP instance of the non-Cisco 802.1Q switch. However, all per-VLAN STP information that is maintained by Cisco switches is separated by a cloud of non-Cisco 802.1Q switches. The non-Cisco 802.1Q cloud that separates the Cisco switches is treated as a single trunk link between the switches.

Rapid PVST+ Interoperation with Legacy 802.1D STP

Rapid PVST+ can interoperate with switches that are running the legacy 802.1D protocol. The switch knows that it is interoperating with equipment running 802.1D when it receives a BPDU version 0. The BPDUs for Rapid PVST+ are version 2. If the BPDU received is an 802.1w BPDU version 2 with the proposal flag set, the switch sends an agreement message after all of the other ports are synchronized. If the BPDU is an 802.1D

BPDUs version 0, the switch does not set the proposal flag and starts the forward-delay timer for the port. The new root port requires twice the forward-delay time to transition to the forwarding state.

The switch interoperates with legacy 802.1D switches as follows:

- **Notification**—Unlike 802.1D BPDUs, 802.1w does not use TCN BPDUs. However, for interoperability with 802.1D switches, Cisco NX-OS processes and generates TCN BPDUs.
- **Acknowledgement**—When an 802.1w switch receives a TCN message on a designated port from an 802.1D switch, it replies with an 802.1D configuration BPDU with the TCA bit set. However, if the TC-while timer (the same as the TC timer in 802.1D) is active on a root port connected to an 802.1D switch and a configuration BPDU with the TCA set is received, the TC-while timer is reset.

This method of operation is required only for 802.1D switches. The 802.1w BPDUs do not have the TCA bit set.

- **Protocol migration**—For backward compatibility with 802.1D switches, 802.1w selectively sends 802.1D configuration BPDUs and TCN BPDUs on a per-port basis.

When a port is initialized, the migrate-delay timer is started (specifies the minimum time during which 802.1w BPDUs are sent), and 802.1w BPDUs are sent. While this timer is active, the switch processes all BPDUs received on that port and ignores the protocol type.

If the switch receives an 802.1D BPDU after the port migration-delay timer has expired, it assumes that it is connected to an 802.1D switch and starts using only 802.1D BPDUs. However, if the 802.1w switch is using 802.1D BPDUs on a port and receives an 802.1w BPDU after the timer has expired, it restarts the timer and starts using 802.1w BPDUs on that port.


Note

If you want all switches to renegotiate the protocol, you must restart Rapid PVST+.

Rapid PVST+ Interoperation with 802.1s MST

Rapid PVST+ interoperates seamlessly with the IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree (MST) standard. No user configuration is needed.

Configuring Rapid PVST+

Rapid PVST+, which has the 802.1w standard applied to the Rapid PVST+ protocol, is the default STP setting in the software.

You enable Rapid PVST+ on a per-VLAN basis. The software maintains a separate instance of STP for each VLAN (except on those VLANs on which you disable STP). By default, Rapid PVST+ is enabled on the default VLAN and on each VLAN that you create.

Enabling Rapid PVST+

Once you enable Rapid PVST+ on the switch, you must enable Rapid PVST+ on the specified VLANs.

Rapid PVST+ is the default STP mode. You cannot simultaneously run MST and Rapid PVST+.

**Note**

Changing the spanning tree mode disrupts traffic because all spanning tree instances are stopped for the previous mode and started for the new mode.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mode rapid-pvst**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mode rapid-pvst	Enables Rapid PVST+ on the switch. Rapid PVST+ is the default spanning tree mode. Note Changing the spanning tree mode disrupts traffic because all spanning tree instances are stopped for the previous mode and started for the new mode.

This example shows how to enable Rapid PVST+ on the switch:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mode rapid-pvst
```

**Note**

Because STP is enabled by default, entering the **show running-config** command to view the resulting configuration does not display the command that you entered to enable Rapid PVST+.

Enabling Rapid PVST+ per VLAN

You can enable or disable Rapid PVST+ on each VLAN.

**Note**

Rapid PVST+ is enabled by default on the default VLAN and on all VLANs that you create.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan-range**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no spanning-tree vlan-range**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree <i>vlan-range</i>	Enables Rapid PVST+ (default STP) on a per VLAN basis. The <i>vlan-range</i> value can be 2 through 4094 (except reserved VLAN values).
Step 3	switch(config)# no spanning-tree <i>vlan-range</i>	<p>(Optional) Disables Rapid PVST+ on the specified VLAN.</p> <p>Caution Do not disable spanning tree on a VLAN unless all switches and bridges in the VLAN have spanning tree disabled. You cannot disable spanning tree on some of the switches and bridges in a VLAN and leave it enabled on other switches and bridges. This action can have unexpected results because switches and bridges with spanning tree enabled will have incomplete information regarding the physical topology of the network.</p> <p>Do not disable spanning tree in a VLAN without ensuring that there are no physical loops present in the VLAN. Spanning tree serves as a safeguard against misconfigurations and cabling errors.</p>

This example shows how to enable STP on a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5
```

Configuring the Root Bridge ID

The software maintains a separate instance of STP for each active VLAN in Rapid PVST+. For each VLAN, the switch with the lowest bridge ID becomes the root bridge for that VLAN.

To configure a VLAN instance to become the root bridge, modify the bridge priority from the default value (32768) to a significantly lower value.

When you enter the **spanning-tree vlan *vlan_ID* root** command, the switch checks the bridge priority of the current root bridges for each VLAN. The switch sets the bridge priority for the specified VLANs to 24576 if this value will cause the switch to become the root for the specified VLANs. If any root bridge for the specified VLANs has a bridge priority lower than 24576, the switch sets the bridge priority for the specified VLANs to 4096 less than the lowest bridge priority.


Note

The **spanning-tree vlan *vlan_ID* root** command fails if the value required to be the root bridge is less than 1.


Caution

The root bridge for each instance of STP should be a backbone or distribution switch. Do not configure an access switch as the STP primary root.

Enter the **diameter** keyword to specify the network diameter (that is, the maximum number of bridge hops between any two end stations in the network). When you specify the network diameter, the software automatically selects an optimal hello time, forward delay time, and maximum age time for a network of that diameter, which can significantly reduce the STP convergence time. You can enter the **hello-time** keyword to override the automatically calculated hello time.

**Note**

With the switch configured as the root bridge, do not manually configure the hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time using the **spanning-tree mst hello-time**, **spanning-tree mst forward-time**, and **spanning-tree mst max-age** configuration commands.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan** *vlan-range* **root primary** [**diameter** *dia* [**hello-time** *hello-time*]]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> root primary [diameter <i>dia</i> [hello-time <i>hello-time</i>]]	Configures a software switch as the primary root bridge. The <i>vlan-range</i> value can be 2 through 4094 (except reserved VLAN values.) The <i>dia</i> default is 7. The <i>hello-time</i> can be from 1 to 10 seconds, and the default value is 2 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the switch as the root bridge for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 root primary diameter 4
```

Configuring a Secondary Root Bridge

When you configure a software switch as the secondary root, the STP bridge priority is modified from the default value (32768) so that the switch is likely to become the root bridge for the specified VLANs if the primary root bridge fails (assuming the other switches in the network use the default bridge priority of 32768). STP sets the bridge priority to 28672.

Enter the **diameter** keyword to specify the network diameter (that is, the maximum number of bridge hops between any two end stations in the network). When you specify the network diameter, the software automatically selects an optimal hello time, forward delay time, and maximum age time for a network of that diameter, which can significantly reduce the STP convergence time. You can enter the **hello-time** keyword to override the automatically calculated hello time.

You configure more than one switch in this manner to have multiple backup root bridges. Enter the same network diameter and hello time values that you used when configuring the primary root bridge.

**Note**

With the switch configured as the root bridge, do not manually configure the hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time using the **spanning-tree mst hello-time**, **spanning-tree mst forward-time**, and **spanning-tree mst max-age** global configuration commands.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-range* root secondary [*diameter dia* [*hello-time hello-time*]]**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> root secondary [<i>diameter dia</i> [<i>hello-time hello-time</i>]]	Configures a software switch as the secondary root bridge. The <i>vlan-range</i> value can be 2 through 4094 (except reserved VLAN values). The <i>dia</i> default is 7. The <i>hello-time</i> can be from 1 to 10 seconds, and the default value is 2 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the switch as the secondary root bridge for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 root secondary diameter 4
```

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Port Priority

You can assign lower priority values to LAN ports that you want Rapid PVST+ to select first and higher priority values to LAN ports that you want Rapid PVST+ to select last. If all LAN ports have the same priority value, Rapid PVST+ puts the LAN port with the lowest LAN port number in the forwarding state and blocks other LAN ports.

The software uses the port priority value when the LAN port is configured as an access port and uses VLAN port priority values when the LAN port is configured as a trunk port.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface *type slot/port***
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree [*vlan vlan-list*] port-priority *priority***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree [vlan <i>vlan-list</i>] port-priority <i>priority</i>	Configures the port priority for the LAN interface. The <i>priority</i> value can be from 0 to 224. The lower the value indicates the higher the priority. The priority values are 0, 32, 64, 96, 128, 160, 192, and 224. All other values are rejected. The default value is 128.

This example shows how to configure the access port priority of an Ethernet interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree port-priority 160
```

You can only apply this command to a physical Ethernet interface.

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Path-Cost Method and Port Cost

On access ports, you assign port cost by the port. On trunk ports, you assign the port cost by VLAN; you can configure the same port cost on all the VLANs on a trunk.

**Note**

In Rapid PVST+ mode, you can use either the short or long path-cost method, and you can configure the method in either the interface or configuration submenu. The default path-cost method is short.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree pathcost method** {**long** | **short**}
3. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
4. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree** [**vlan** *vlan-id*] **cost** [*value* | **auto**]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree pathcost method { long short }	Selects the method used for Rapid PVST+ path-cost calculations. The default method is the short method.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree [vlan <i>vlan-id</i>] cost [<i>value</i> auto]	Configures the port cost for the LAN interface. The cost value, depending on the path-cost calculation method, can be as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • short—1 to 65535 • long—1 to 200000000 <p>Note You configure this parameter per interface on access ports and per VLAN on trunk ports. The default is auto, which sets the port cost on both the path-cost calculation method and the media speed.</p>

This example shows how to configure the access port cost of an Ethernet interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# spanning-tree pathcost method long
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree cost 1000
```

You can only apply this command to a physical Ethernet interface.

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Bridge Priority of a VLAN

You can configure the Rapid PVST+ bridge priority of a VLAN.



Note

Be careful when using this configuration. For most situations, we recommend that you configure the primary root and secondary root to modify the bridge priority.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan** *vlan-range* **priority** *value*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> priority <i>value</i>	Configures the bridge priority of a VLAN. Valid values are 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056,

	Command or Action	Purpose
		49152, 53248, 57344, and 61440. All other values are rejected. The default value is 32768.

This example shows how to configure the bridge priority of a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 priority 8192
```

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Hello Time for a VLAN

You can configure the Rapid PVST+ hello time for a VLAN.



Note

Be careful when using this configuration. For most situations, we recommend that you configure the primary root and secondary root to modify the hello time.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-range* hello-time *hello-time***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> hello-time <i>hello-time</i>	Configures the hello time of a VLAN. The hello time value can be from 1 to 10 seconds. The default is 2 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the hello time for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 hello-time 7
```

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Forward Delay Time for a VLAN

You can configure the forward delay time per VLAN when using Rapid PVST+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-range* forward-time *forward-time***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> forward-time <i>forward-time</i>	Configures the forward delay time of a VLAN. The forward delay time value can be from 4 to 30 seconds, and the default is 15 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the forward delay time for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 forward-time 21
```

Configuring the Rapid PVST+ Maximum Age Time for a VLAN

You can configure the maximum age time per VLAN when using Rapid PVST+.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree vlan *vlan-range* max-age *max-age***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan <i>vlan-range</i> max-age <i>max-age</i>	Configures the maximum aging time of a VLAN. The maximum aging time value can be from 6 to 40 seconds, and the default is 20 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the maximum aging time for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree vlan 5 max-age 36
```

Specifying the Link Type

Rapid connectivity (802.1w standard) is established only on point-to-point links. By default, the link type is controlled from the duplex mode of the interface. A full-duplex port is considered to have a point-to-point connection; a half-duplex port is considered to have a shared connection.

If you have a half-duplex link physically connected point-to-point to a single port on a remote switch, you can override the default setting on the link type and enable rapid transitions.

If you set the link to shared, STP moves back to 802.1D.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree link-type** {auto | point-to-point | shared}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree link-type {auto point-to-point shared}	Configures the link type to be either a point-to-point link or shared link. The system reads the default value from the switch connection, as follows: half duplex links are shared and full-duplex links are point-to-point. If the link type is shared, the STP reverts to 802.1D. The default is auto, which sets the link type based on the duplex setting of the interface.

This example shows how to configure the link type as a point-to-point link:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree link-type point-to-point
```

You can only apply this command to a physical Ethernet interface.

Restarting the Protocol

A bridge running Rapid PVST+ can send 802.1D BPDUs on one of its ports when it is connected to a legacy bridge. However, the STP protocol migration cannot determine whether the legacy switch has been removed from the link unless the legacy switch is the designated switch. You can restart the protocol negotiation (force the renegotiation with neighboring switches) on the entire switch or on specified interfaces.

Command	Purpose
switch# clear spanning-tree detected-protocol [interface <i>interface</i> [<i>interface-num</i> <i>port-channel</i>]]	Restarts Rapid PVST+ on all interfaces on the switch or specified interfaces.

This example shows how to restart Rapid PVST+ on an Ethernet interface:

```
switch# clear spanning-tree detected-protocol interface ethernet 1/8
```

Verifying the Rapid PVST+ Configuration

Use the following commands to display Rapid PVST+ configuration information.

Command	Purpose
show running-config spanning-tree [all]	Displays the current spanning tree configuration.
show spanning-tree [options]	Displays selected detailed information for the current spanning tree configuration.

This example shows how to display spanning tree status:

```
switch# show spanning-tree brief
```

```
VLAN0001
  Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
    Root ID    Priority    32768
              Address     001c.b05a.5447
              Cost        2
              Port        131 (Ethernet1/3)
              Hello Time  2 sec   Max Age 20 sec   Forward Delay 15 sec
    Bridge ID  Priority    32769 (priority 32768 sys-id-ext 1)
              Address     000d.ec6d.7841
              Hello Time  2 sec   Max Age 20 sec   Forward Delay 15 sec
Interface      Role Sts Cost      Prio.Nbr Type
-----
Eth1/3         Root FWD 2         128.131 P2p Peer (STP)
veth1/1        Desg FWD 2         128.129 Edge P2p
```



Configuring Multiple Spanning Tree

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About MST, page 85](#)
- [Configuring MST, page 93](#)
- [Verifying the MST Configuration, page 111](#)

Information About MST

MST Overview



Note

Spanning tree is used to refer to IEEE 802.1w and IEEE 802.1s. If the text is discussing the IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol, 802.1D is stated specifically.

MST maps multiple VLANs into a spanning tree instance with each instance having a spanning tree topology independent of other spanning tree instances. This architecture provides multiple forwarding paths for data traffic, enables load balancing, and reduces the number of STP instances required to support a large number of VLANs.

MST provides rapid convergence through explicit handshaking as each MST instance uses the IEEE 802.1w standard, which eliminates the 802.1D forwarding delay and quickly transitions root bridge ports and designated ports to the forwarding state.

MAC address reduction is always enabled while you are using MST. You cannot disable this feature.

MST improves spanning tree operation and maintains backward compatibility with these STP versions:

- Original 802.1D spanning tree
- Rapid per-VLAN spanning tree (Rapid PVST+)
IEEE 802.1w defined the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and was incorporated into IEEE 802.1D.
- IEEE 802.1s defined MST and was incorporated into IEEE 802.1Q.

**Note**

You must enable MST; Rapid PVST+ is the default spanning tree mode.

MST Regions

To allow switches to participate in MST instances, you must consistently configure the switches with the same MST configuration information.

A collection of interconnected switches that have the same MST configuration is an MST region. An MST region is a linked group of MST bridges with the same MST configuration.

The MST configuration controls the MST region to which each switch belongs. The configuration includes the name of the region, the revision number, and the MST VLAN-to-instance assignment map.

A region can have one or multiple members with the same MST configuration. Each member must be capable of processing 802.1w bridge protocol data units (BPDUs). There is no limit to the number of MST regions in a network.

Each region can support up to 65 MST instances (MSTIs). Instances are identified by any number in the range from 1 to 4094. The system reserves Instance 0 for a special instance, which is the IST. You can assign a VLAN to only one MST instance at a time.

The MST region appears as a single bridge to adjacent MST regions and to other Rapid PVST+ regions and 802.1D spanning tree protocols.

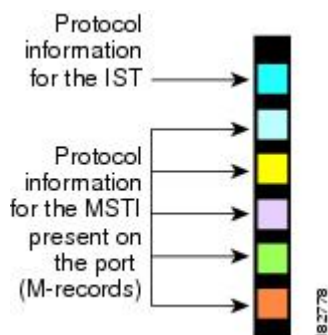
**Note**

We recommend that you do not partition the network into a large number of regions.

MST BPDUs

Each region has only one MST BPDU, and that BPDU carries an M-record for each MSTI within the region (see the following figure). Only the IST sends BPDUs for the MST region; all M-records are encapsulated in that one BPDU that the IST sends. Because the MST BPDU carries information for all instances, the number of BPDUs that need to be processed to support MSTIs is significantly reduced.

Figure 14: MST BPDU with M-Records for MSTIs



MST Configuration Information

The MST configuration that must be identical on all switches within a single MST region is configured by the user.

You can configure the following three parameters of the MST configuration:

- Name—32-character string, null padded and null terminated, identifying the MST region
- Revision number—Unsigned 16-bit number that identifies the revision of the current MST configuration

**Note**

You must set the revision number when required as part of the MST configuration. The revision number is *not* incremented automatically each time that the MST configuration is committed.

- MST configuration table—4096-element table that associates each of the potential 4094 VLANs supported to a given instance with the first (0) and last element (4095) set to 0. The value of element number X represents the instance to which VLAN X is mapped.

**Caution**

When you change the VLAN-to-MSTI mapping, the system restarts MST.

MST BPDUs contain these three configuration parameters. An MST bridge accepts an MST BPDU into its own region only if these three configuration parameters match exactly. If one configuration attribute differs, the MST bridge considers the BPDU to be from another MST region.

IST, CIST, and CST

IST, CIST, and CST Overview

Unlike Rapid PVST+, in which all the STP instances are independent, MST establishes and maintains IST, CIST, and CST spanning trees, as follows:

- An IST is the spanning tree that runs in an MST region.

MST establishes and maintains additional spanning trees within each MST region; these spanning trees are called multiple spanning tree instances (MSTIs).

Instance 0 is a special instance for a region, known as the IST. The IST always exists on all ports; you cannot delete the IST, or instance 0. By default, all VLANs are assigned to the IST. All other MST instances are numbered from 1 to 4094.

The IST is the only STP instance that sends and receives BPDUs. All of the other MSTI information is contained in MST records (M-records), which are encapsulated within MST BPDUs.

All MSTIs within the same region share the same protocol timers, but each MSTI has its own topology parameters, such as the root bridge ID, the root path cost, and so forth.

An MSTI is local to the region; for example, MSTI 9 in region A is independent of MSTI 9 in region B, even if regions A and B are interconnected.

- The CST interconnects the MST regions and any instance of 802.1D and 802.1w STP that may be running on the network. The CST is the one STP instance for the entire bridged network and encompasses all MST regions and 802.1w and 802.1D instances.
- A CIST is a collection of the ISTs in each MST region. The CIST is the same as an IST inside an MST region, and the same as a CST outside an MST region.

The spanning tree computed in an MST region appears as a subtree in the CST that encompasses the entire switched domain. The CIST is formed by the spanning tree algorithm running among switches that support the 802.1w, 802.1s, and 802.1D standards. The CIST inside an MST region is the same as the CST outside a region.

Spanning Tree Operation Within an MST Region

The IST connects all the MST switches in a region. When the IST converges, the root of the IST becomes the CIST regional root. The CIST regional root is also the CIST root if there is only one region in the network. If the CIST root is outside the region, the protocol selects one of the MST switches at the boundary of the region as the CIST regional root.

When an MST switch initializes, it sends BPDUs that identify itself as the root of the CIST and the CIST regional root, with both the path costs to the CIST root and to the CIST regional root set to zero. The switch also initializes all of its MSTIs and claims to be the root for all of them. If the switch receives superior MST root information (lower switch ID, lower path cost, and so forth) than the information that is currently stored for the port, it relinquishes its claim as the CIST regional root.

During initialization, an MST region might have many subregions, each with its own CIST regional root. As switches receive superior IST information from a neighbor in the same region, they leave their old subregions and join the new subregion that contains the true CIST regional root. This action causes all subregions to shrink except for the subregion that contains the true CIST regional root.

All switches in the MST region must agree on the same CIST regional root. Any two switches in the region will only synchronize their port roles for an MSTI if they converge to a common CIST regional root.

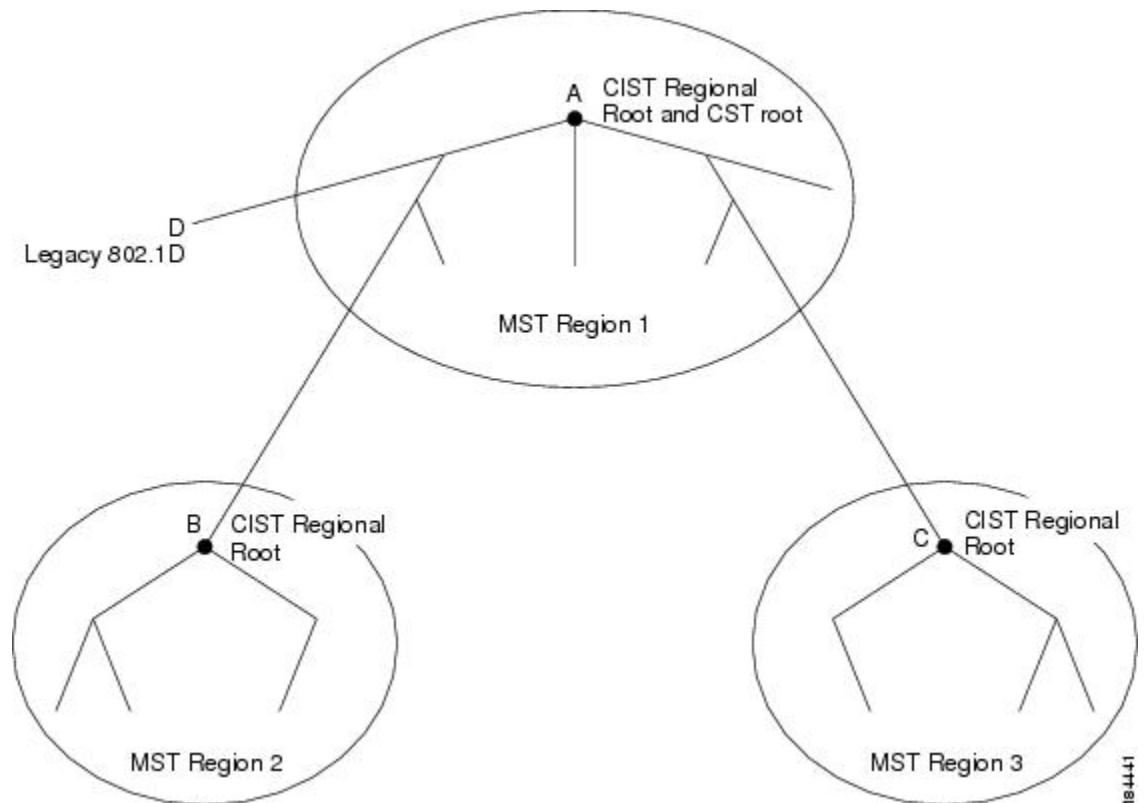
Spanning Tree Operations Between MST Regions

If you have multiple regions or 802.1w or 802.1D STP instances within a network, MST establishes and maintains the CST, which includes all MST regions and all 802.1w and 802.1D STP switches in the network. The MSTIs combine with the IST at the boundary of the region to become the CST.

The IST connects all the MST switches in the region and appears as a subtree in the CIST that encompasses the entire switched domain. The root of the subtree is the CIST regional root. The MST region appears as a virtual switch to adjacent STP switches and MST regions.

The following figure shows a network with three MST regions and an 802.1D switch (D). The CIST regional root for region 1 (A) is also the CIST root. The CIST regional root for region 2 (B) and the CIST regional root for region 3 (C) are the roots for their respective subtrees within the CIST.

Figure 15: MST Regions, CIST Regional Roots, and CST Root



Only the CST instance sends and receives BPDUs. MSTIs add their spanning tree information into the BPDUs (as M-records) to interact with neighboring switches and compute the final spanning tree topology. Because of this process, the spanning tree parameters related to the BPDU transmission (for example, hello time, forward time, max-age, and max-hops) are configured only on the CST instance but affect all MSTIs. You can configure the parameters related to the spanning tree topology (for example, the switch priority, the port VLAN cost, and the port VLAN priority) on both the CST instance and the MSTI.

MST switches use Version 3 BPDUs or 802.1D STP BPDUs to communicate with 802.1D-only switches. MST switches use MST BPDUs to communicate with MST switches.

MST Terminology

MST naming conventions include identification of some internal or regional parameters. These parameters are used only within an MST region, compared to external parameters that are used throughout the whole network. Because the CIST is the only spanning tree instance that spans the whole network, only the CIST parameters require the external qualifiers and not the internal or regional qualifiers. The MST terminology is as follows:

- The CIST root is the root bridge for the CIST, which is the unique instance that spans the whole network.

- The CIST external root path cost is the cost to the CIST root. This cost is left unchanged within an MST region. An MST region looks like a single switch to the CIST. The CIST external root path cost is the root path cost calculated between these virtual switches and switches that do not belong to any region.
- If the CIST root is in the region, the CIST regional root is the CIST root. Otherwise, the CIST regional root is the closest switch to the CIST root in the region. The CIST regional root acts as a root bridge for the IST.
- The CIST internal root path cost is the cost to the CIST regional root in a region. This cost is only relevant to the IST, instance 0.

Hop Count

MST does not use the message-age and maximum-age information in the configuration BPDU to compute the STP topology inside the MST region. Instead, the protocol uses the path cost to the root and a hop-count mechanism similar to the IP time-to-live (TTL) mechanism.

By using the **spanning-tree mst max-hops** global configuration command, you can configure the maximum hops inside the region and apply it to the IST and all MST instances in that region.

The hop count achieves the same result as the message-age information (triggers a reconfiguration). The root bridge of the instance always sends a BPDU (or M-record) with a cost of 0 and the hop count set to the maximum value. When a switch receives this BPDU, it decrements the received remaining hop count by one and propagates this value as the remaining hop count in the BPDUs that it generates. When the count reaches zero, the switch discards the BPDU and ages the information held for the port.

The message-age and maximum-age information in the 802.1w portion of the BPDU remain the same throughout the region (only on the IST), and the same values are propagated by the region-designated ports at the boundary.

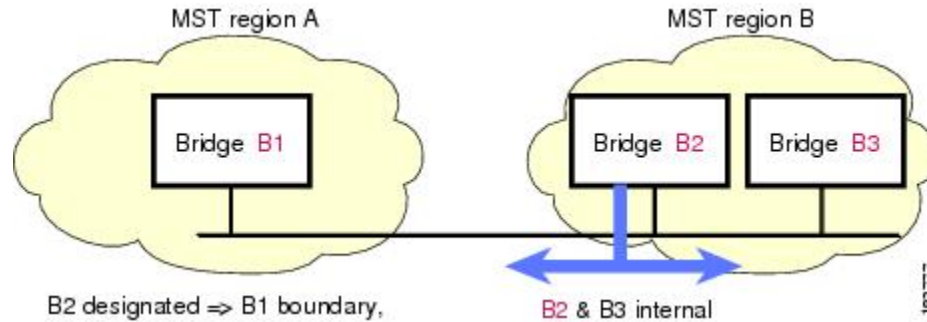
You configure a maximum aging time as the number of seconds that a switch waits without receiving spanning tree configuration messages before attempting a reconfiguration.

Boundary Ports

A boundary port is a port that connects one region to another. A designated port knows that it is on the boundary if it detects an STP bridge or receives an agreement proposal from an MST bridge with a different configuration or a Rapid PVST+ bridge. This definition allows two ports that are internal to a region to share a segment

with a port that belongs to a different region, creating the possibility of receiving both internal and external messages on a port (see the following figure).

Figure 16: MST Boundary Ports



At the boundary, the roles of MST ports do not matter; the system forces their state to be the same as the IST port state. If the boundary flag is set for the port, the MST port-role selection process assigns a port role to the boundary and assigns the same state as the state of the IST port. The IST port at the boundary can take up any port role except a backup port role.

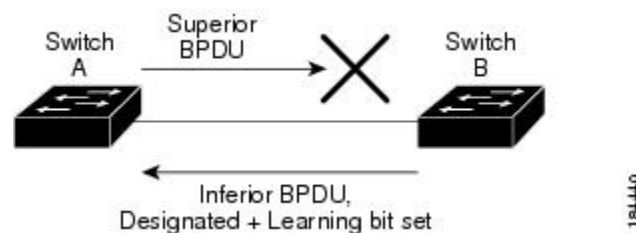
Spanning-Tree Dispute Mechanism

Currently, this feature is not present in the IEEE MST standard, but it is included in the standard-compliant implementation. The software checks the consistency of the port role and state in the received BPDUs to detect unidirectional link failures that could cause bridging loops.

When a designated port detects a conflict, it keeps its role but reverts to a discarding state because disrupting connectivity in case of inconsistency is preferable to opening a bridging loop.

The following figure shows a unidirectional link failure that typically creates a bridging loop. Switch A is the root bridge, and its BPDUs are lost on the link leading to Switch B. Rapid PVST+ (802.1w) and MST BPDUs include the role and state of the sending port. With this information, Switch A can detect that Switch B does not react to the superior BPDUs that it sends and that Switch B is the designated, not root port. As a result, Switch A blocks (or keeps blocking) its port, which prevents the bridging loop. The block is shown as an STP dispute.

Figure 17: Detecting a Unidirectional Link Failure



Port Cost and Port Priority

Spanning tree uses port costs to break a tie for the designated port. Lower values indicate lower port costs, and spanning tree chooses the least costly path. Default port costs are taken from the bandwidth of the interface, as follows:

- 10 Mbps—2,000,000
- 100 Mbps—200,000
- 1 Gigabit Ethernet—20,000
- 10 Gigabit Ethernet—2,000

You can configure the port costs in order to influence which port is chosen.



Note

MST always uses the long path-cost calculation method, so the range of valid values is between 1 and 200,000,000.

The system uses port priorities to break ties among ports with the same cost. A lower number indicates a higher priority. The default port priority is 128. You can configure the priority to values between 0 and 224, in increments of 32.

Interoperability with IEEE 802.1D

A switch that runs MST supports a built-in protocol migration feature that enables it to interoperate with 802.1D STP switches. If this switch receives an 802.1D configuration BPDU (a BPDU with the protocol version set to 0), it sends only 802.1D BPDUs on that port. In addition, an MST switch can detect that a port is at the boundary of a region when it receives an 802.1D BPDU, an MST BPDU (Version 3) associated with a different region, or an 802.1w BPDU (Version 2).

However, the switch does not automatically revert to the MST mode if it no longer receives 802.1D BPDUs because it cannot detect whether the 802.1D switch has been removed from the link unless the 802.1D switch is the designated switch. A switch might also continue to assign a boundary role to a port when the switch to which this switch is connected has joined the region.

To restart the protocol migration process (force the renegotiation with neighboring switches), enter the **clear spanning-tree detected-protocols** command.

All Rapid PVST+ switches (and all 802.1D STP switches) on the link can process MST BPDUs as if they are 802.1w BPDUs. MST switches can send either Version 0 configuration and topology change notification (TCN) BPDUs or Version 3 MST BPDUs on a boundary port. A boundary port connects to a LAN, the designated switch of which is either a single spanning tree switch or a switch with a different MST configuration.



Note

MST interoperates with the Cisco prestandard Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) whenever it receives prestandard MSTP on an MST port; no explicit configuration is necessary.

Interoperability with Rapid PVST+: Understanding PVST Simulation

MST interoperates with Rapid PVST+ with no need for user configuration. The PVST simulation feature enables this seamless interoperability.

**Note**

PVST simulation is enabled by default. That is, by default, all interfaces on the switch interoperate between MST and Rapid PVST+.

However, you may want to control the connection between MST and Rapid PVST+ to protect against accidentally connecting an MST-enabled port to a Rapid PVST+-enabled port. Because Rapid PVST+ is the default STP mode, you may encounter many Rapid PVST+-enabled connections.

Disabling Rapid PVST+ simulation, which can be done per port or globally for the entire switch, moves the MST-enabled port to the blocking state once it detects it is connected to a Rapid PVST+-enabled port. This port remains in the inconsistent state until the port stops receiving Rapid PVST+/SSTP BPDUs, and then the port resumes the normal STP transition process.

Configuring MST

MST Configuration Guidelines

When configuring MST, follow these guidelines:

- When you work with private VLANs, enter the **private-vlan synchronize** command to map the secondary VLANs to the same MST instance as the primary VLAN.
- When you are in the MST configuration mode, the following guidelines apply:
 - Each command reference line creates its pending regional configuration.
 - The pending region configuration starts with the current region configuration.
 - To leave the MST configuration mode without committing any changes, enter the **abort** command.
 - To leave the MST configuration mode and commit all the changes that you made before you left the mode, enter the **exit** command.

Enabling MST

You must enable MST; Rapid PVST+ is the default.

**Caution**

Changing the spanning tree mode disrupts traffic because all spanning tree instances are stopped for the previous mode and started for the new mode. Also, having two different spanning-tree modes on Virtual Port Channel (vPC) peer switches is an inconsistency, so this operation is disruptive.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch# **configure terminal**
3. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mode mst**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **no spanning-tree mode mst**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch# configure terminal	Enters configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config)# spanning-tree mode mst	Enables MST on the switch.
Step 4	switch(config)# no spanning-tree mode mst	(Optional) Disables MST on the switch and returns you to Rapid PVST+.

This example shows how to enable MST on the switch:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mode mst
```



Note

Because STP is enabled by default, entering a **show running-config** command to view the resulting configuration does not display the command that you entered to enable STP.

Entering MST Configuration Mode

You enter MST configuration mode to configure the MST name, VLAN-to-instance mapping, and MST revision number on the switch.

For two or more switches to be in the same MST region, they must have the identical MST name, VLAN-to-instance mapping, and MST revision number.



Note

Each command reference line creates its pending regional configuration in MST configuration mode. In addition, the pending region configuration starts with the current region configuration.

When you are working in MST configuration mode, note the difference between the **exit** and **abort** commands.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **exit** or switch(config-mst)# **abort**
4. (Optional) switch(config)# **no spanning-tree mst configuration**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration mode on the system. You must be in the MST configuration mode to assign the MST configuration parameters, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MST name • Instance-to-VLAN mapping • MST revision number • Synchronize primary and secondary VLANs in private VLANs
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# exit or switch(config-mst)# abort	Exits or aborts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The exit command commits all the changes and exits MST configuration mode. • The abort command exits the MST configuration mode without committing any of the changes.
Step 4	switch(config)# no spanning-tree mst configuration	(Optional) Returns the MST region configuration to the following default values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The region name is an empty string. • No VLANs are mapped to any MST instance (all VLANs are mapped to the CIST instance). • The revision number is 0.

Specifying the MST Name

You configure a region name on the bridge. For two or more bridges to be in the same MST region, they must have the identical MST name, VLAN-to-instance mapping, and MST revision number.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **name name**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration submenu.
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# name name	Specifies the name for MST region. The <i>name</i> string has a maximum length of 32 case-sensitive characters. The default is an empty string.

This example shows how to set the name of the MST region:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
switch(config-mst)# name accounting
```

Specifying the MST Configuration Revision Number

You configure the revision number on the bridge. For two or more bridges to be in the same MST region, they must have the identical MST name, VLAN-to-instance mapping, and MST revision number.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **revision version**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration submenu.
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# revision version	Specifies the revision number for the MST region. The range is from 0 to 65535, and the default value is 0.

This example shows how to configure the revision number of the MSTI region for 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
switch(config-mst)# revision 5
```

Specifying the Configuration on an MST Region

For two or more switches to be in the same MST region, they must have the same VLAN-to-instance mapping, the same configuration revision number, and the same MST name.

A region can have one member or multiple members with the same MST configuration; each member must be capable of processing IEEE 802.1w RSTP BPDUs. There is no limit to the number of MST regions in a network, but each region can support only up to 65 MST instances. You can assign a VLAN to only one MST instance at a time.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **instance** *instance-id* **vlan** *vlan-range*
4. switch(config-mst)# **name** *name*
5. switch(config-mst)# **revision** *version*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration submode.
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# instance <i>instance-id</i> vlan <i>vlan-range</i>	<p>Maps VLANs to an MST instance as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>instance-id</i> , the range is from 1 to 4094. • For vlan <i>vlan-range</i> , the range is from 1 to 4094. <p>When you map VLANs to an MST instance, the mapping is incremental, and the VLANs specified in the command are added to or removed from the VLANs that were previously mapped.</p> <p>To specify a VLAN range, enter a hyphen; for example, enter the instance 1 vlan 1-63 command to map VLANs 1 through 63 to MST instance 1.</p> <p>To specify a VLAN series, enter a comma; for example, enter the instance 1 vlan 10, 20, 30 command to map VLANs 10, 20, and 30 to MST instance 1.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	switch(config-mst)# name <i>name</i>	Specifies the instance name. The <i>name</i> string has a maximum length of 32 case-sensitive characters.
Step 5	switch(config-mst)# revision <i>version</i>	Specifies the configuration revision number. The range is from 0 to 65535.

To return to defaults, do the following:

- To return to the default MST region configuration settings, enter the **no spanning-tree mst configuration** configuration command.
- To return to the default VLAN-to-instance map, enter the **no instance** *instance-id* **vlan** *vlan-range* MST configuration command.
- To return to the default name, enter the **no name** MST configuration command.
- To return to the default revision number, enter the **no revision** MST configuration command.
- To reenble Rapid PVST+, enter the **no spanning-tree mode** or the **spanning-tree mode rapid-pvst** global configuration command.

This example shows how to enter MST configuration mode, map VLANs 10 to 20 to MST instance 1, name the region region1, set the configuration revision to 1, display the pending configuration, apply the changes, and return to global configuration mode:

```
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
switch(config-mst)# instance 1 vlan 10-20
switch(config-mst)# name region1
switch(config-mst)# revision 1
switch(config-mst)# show pending
Pending MST configuration
Name      [region1]
Revision  1
Instances configured 2
Instance  Vlans Mapped
-----
0         1-9,21-4094
1         10-20
-----
```

Mapping and Unmapping VLANs to MST Instances



Caution

When you change the VLAN-to-MSTI mapping, the system restarts MST.



Note

You cannot disable an MSTI.

For two or more bridges to be in the same MST region, they must have the identical MST name, VLAN-to-instance mapping, and MST revision number.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **instance** *instance-id* **vlan** *vlan-range*
4. switch(config-mst)# **no instance** *instance-id* **vlan** *vlan-range*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration submode.
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# instance <i>instance-id</i> vlan <i>vlan-range</i>	Maps VLANs to an MST instance, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>instance-id</i> the range is from 1 to 4094. Instance 0 is reserved for the IST for each MST region. • For <i>vlan-range</i> the range is from 1 to 4094. When you map VLANs to an MSTI, the mapping is incremental, and the VLANs specified in the command are added to or removed from the VLANs that were previously mapped.
Step 4	switch(config-mst)# no instance <i>instance-id</i> vlan <i>vlan-range</i>	Deletes the specified instance and returns the VLANs to the default MSTI, which is the CIST.

This example shows how to map VLAN 200 to MSTI 3:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
switch(config-mst)# instance 3 vlan 200
```

Mapping Secondary VLANs to Same MSTI as Primary VLANs for Private VLANs

When you are working with private VLANs on the system, all secondary VLANs must be in the same MSTI and their associated primary VLAN.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst configuration**
3. switch(config-mst)# **private-vlan synchronize**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration	Enters MST configuration submenu.
Step 3	switch(config-mst)# private-vlan synchronize	Automatically maps all secondary VLANs to the same MSTI as their associated primary VLAN in all private VLANs.

This example shows how to automatically map all the secondary VLANs to the same MSTI as their associated primary VLANs in all private VLANs:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
switch(config-mst)# private-vlan synchronize
```

Configuring the Root Bridge

You can configure the switch to become the root bridge.

**Note**

The root bridge for each MSTI should be a backbone or distribution switch. Do not configure an access switch as the spanning tree primary root bridge.

Enter the **diameter** keyword, which is available only for MSTI 0 (or the IST), to specify the network diameter (that is, the maximum number of hops between any two end stations in the network). When you specify the network diameter, the switch automatically sets an optimal hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time for a network of that diameter, which can significantly reduce the convergence time. You can enter the **hello** keyword to override the automatically calculated hello time.

**Note**

With the switch configured as the root bridge, do not manually configure the hello time, forward-delay time, and maximum-age time using the **spanning-tree mst hello-time**, **spanning-tree mst forward-time**, and **spanning-tree mst max-age** global configuration commands.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst instance-id root {primary | secondary} [diameter dia [hello-time hello-time]]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no spanning-tree mst instance-id root**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root {primary secondary} [diameter <i>dia</i> [hello-time <i>hello-time</i>]]	Configures a switch as the root bridge as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is from 1 to 4094. For diameter <i>net-diameter</i>, specify the maximum number of hops between any two end stations. The default is 7. This keyword is available only for MST instance 0. For hello-time <i>seconds</i>, specify the interval in seconds between the generation of configuration messages by the root bridge. The range is from 1 to 10 seconds; the default is 2 seconds.
Step 3	switch(config)# no spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root	(Optional) Returns the switch priority, diameter, and hello time to default values.

This example shows how to configure the switch as the root switch for MSTI 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst 5 root primary
```

Configuring a Secondary Root Bridge

You can execute this command on more than one switch to configure multiple backup root bridges. Enter the same network diameter and hello-time values that you used when you configured the primary root bridge with the **spanning-tree mst root primary** configuration command.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst** *instance-id* **root {primary | secondary}** **[diameter** *dia* **[hello-time** *hello-time***]]**
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no spanning-tree mst** *instance-id* **root**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root { primary secondary } [diameter <i>dia</i> [hello-time <i>hello-time</i>]]	Configures a switch as the secondary root bridge as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is from 1 to 4094. • For diameter <i>net-diameter</i>, specify the maximum number of hops between any two end stations. The default is 7. This keyword is available only for MST instance 0. • For hello-time <i>seconds</i>, specify the interval in seconds between the generation of configuration messages by the root bridge. The range is from 1 to 10 seconds; the default is 2 seconds.
Step 3	switch(config)# no spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> root	(Optional) Returns the switch priority, diameter, and hello-time to default values.

This example shows how to configure the switch as the secondary root switch for MSTI 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst 5 root secondary
```

Configuring the Port Priority

If a loop occurs, MST uses the port priority when selecting an interface to put into the forwarding state. You can assign lower priority values to interfaces that you want selected first and higher priority values to the interface that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same priority value, MST puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {{*type slot/port*} | {**port-channel** *number*}}
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree mst** *instance-id* **port-priority** *priority*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface {{ <i>type slot/port</i> } { port-channel <i>number</i> }}	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> port-priority <i>priority</i>	Configures the port priority as follows:

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single MSTI, a range of MSTIs separated by a hyphen, or a series of MSTIs separated by a comma. The range is from 1 to 4094. For <i>priority</i>, the range is 0 to 224 in increments of 32. The default is 128. A lower number indicates a higher priority. <p>The priority values are 0, 32, 64, 96, 128, 160, 192, and 224. The system rejects all other values.</p>

This example shows how to set the MST interface port priority for MSTI 3 on Ethernet port 3/1 to 64:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 3/1
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst 3 port-priority 64
```

You can only apply this command to a physical Ethernet interface.

Configuring the Port Cost

The MST path-cost default value is derived from the media speed of an interface. If a loop occurs, MST uses the cost when selecting an interface to put in the forwarding state. You can assign lower cost values to interfaces that you want selected first and higher cost to interfaces values that you want selected last. If all interfaces have the same cost value, MST puts the interface with the lowest interface number in the forwarding state and blocks the other interfaces.



Note MST uses the long path-cost calculation method.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *{{type slot/port}}* | **port-channel number**}}
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree mst** *instance-id* **cost** [*cost* | **auto**]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>{{type slot/port}}</i> port-channel number }}	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> cost [<i>cost</i> auto]	Configures the cost.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>If a loop occurs, MST uses the path cost when selecting an interface to place into the forwarding state. A lower path cost represents higher-speed transmission as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is from 1 to 4094. • For <i>cost</i>, the range is from 1 to 200000000. The default value is auto, which is derived from the media speed of the interface.

This example shows how to set the MST interface port cost on Ethernet 3/1 for MSTI 4:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 3/1
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst 4 cost 17031970
```

Configuring the Switch Priority

You can configure the switch priority for an MST instance so that it is more likely that the specified switch is chosen as the root bridge.



Note

Exercise care when using this command. For most situations, we recommend that you enter the **spanning-tree mst root primary** and the **spanning-tree mst root secondary** global configuration commands to modify the switch priority.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst *instance-id* priority *priority-value***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst <i>instance-id</i> priority <i>priority-value</i>	<p>Configures a switch priority as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For <i>instance-id</i>, you can specify a single instance, a range of instances separated by a hyphen, or a series of instances separated by a comma. The range is from 1 to 4094.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For priority, the range is from 0 to 61440 in increments of 4096; the default is 32768. A lower number indicates that the switch will most likely be chosen as the root bridge. <p>Priority values are 0, 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344, and 61440. The system rejects all other values.</p>

This example shows how to configure the priority of the bridge to 4096 for MSTI 5:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst 5 priority 4096
```

Configuring the Hello Time

You can configure the interval between the generation of configuration messages by the root bridge for all instances on the switch by changing the hello time.



Note

Exercise care when using this command. For most situations, we recommend that you enter the **spanning-tree mst instance-id root primary** and the **spanning-tree mst instance-id root secondary** configuration commands to modify the hello time.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst hello-time seconds**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst hello-time seconds	Configures the hello time for all MST instances. The hello time is the interval between the generation of configuration messages by the root bridge. These messages mean that the switch is alive. For <i>seconds</i> , the range is from 1 to 10, and the default is 2 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the hello time of the switch to 1 second:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst hello-time 1
```

Configuring the Forwarding-Delay Time

You can set the forward delay timer for all MST instances on the switch with one command.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst forward-time** *seconds*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst forward-time <i>seconds</i>	Configures the forward time for all MST instances. The forward delay is the number of seconds that a port waits before changing from its spanning tree blocking and learning states to the forwarding state. For <i>seconds</i> , the range is from 4 to 30, and the default is 15 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the forward-delay time of the switch to 10 seconds:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst forward-time 10
```

Configuring the Maximum-Aging Time

The maximum-aging timer is the number of seconds that a switch waits without receiving spanning tree configuration messages before attempting a reconfiguration.

You set the maximum-aging timer for all MST instances on the switch with one command (the maximum age time only applies to the IST).

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst max-age** *seconds*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst max-age <i>seconds</i>	Configures the maximum-aging time for all MST instances. The maximum-aging time is the number of seconds that a switch waits without receiving spanning tree configuration messages before attempting a reconfiguration. For <i>seconds</i> , the range is from 6 to 40, and the default is 20 seconds.

This example shows how to configure the maximum-aging timer of the switch to 40 seconds:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst max-age 40
```

Configuring the Maximum-Hop Count

MST uses the path cost to the IST regional root and a hop-count mechanism similar to the IP time-to-live (TTL) mechanism. You configure the maximum hops inside the region and apply it to the IST and all MST instances in that region. The hop count achieves the same result as the message-age information (triggers a reconfiguration).

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree mst max-hops** *hop-count*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree mst max-hops <i>hop-count</i>	Specifies the number of hops in a region before the BPDU is discarded, and the information held for a port is aged. For <i>hop-count</i> , the range is from 1 to 255, and the default value is 20 hops.

This example shows how to set the maximum hops to 40:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree mst max-hops 40
```

Configuring PVST Simulation Globally

You can block this automatic feature either globally or per port. You can enter the global command and change the PVST simulation setting for the entire switch while you are in interface command mode.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **no spanning-tree mst simulate pvst global**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# no spanning-tree mst simulate pvst global	Disables all interfaces on the switch from automatically interoperating with connected switch that is running in Rapid PVST+ mode. By default, all interfaces on the switch operate seamlessly between Rapid PVST+ and MST.

This example shows how to prevent the switch from automatically interoperating with a connecting switch that is running Rapid PVST+:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no spanning-tree mst simulate pvst global
```

Configuring PVST Simulation Per Port

MST interoperates seamlessly with Rapid PVST+. However, to prevent an accidental connection to a switch that does not run MST as the default STP mode, you may want to disable this automatic feature. If you disable PVST simulation, the MST-enabled port moves to the blocking state once it detects it is connected to a Rapid PVST+-enabled port. This port remains in the inconsistent state until the port stops receiving BPDUs, and then the port resumes the normal STP transition process.

You can block this automatic feature either globally or per port.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *{{type slot/port} | {port-channel number}}*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree mst simulate pvst disable**
4. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree mst simulate pvst**
5. switch(config-if)# **no spanning-tree mst simulate pvst**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface {{ <i>type slot/port</i> } { port-channel number }}	Specifies an interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst simulate pvst disable	Disables specified interfaces from automatically interoperating with a connected switch that is running in Rapid PVST+ mode. By default, all interfaces on the switch operate seamlessly between Rapid PVST+ and MST.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst simulate pvst	Reenables the seamless operation between MST and Rapid PVST+ on specified interfaces.
Step 5	switch(config-if)# no spanning-tree mst simulate pvst	Sets the interface to the switch-wide MST and Rapid PVST+ interoperation that you configured using the spanning-tree mst simulate pvst global command.

This example shows how to prevent the specified interfaces from automatically interoperating with a connecting switch that is not running MST:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst simulate pvst disable
```

Specifying the Link Type

Rapid connectivity (802.1w standard) is established only on point-to-point links. By default, the link type is controlled from the duplex mode of the interface. A full-duplex port is considered to have a point-to-point connection; a half-duplex port is considered to have a shared connection.

If you have a half-duplex link physically connected point-to-point to a single port on a remote switch, you can override the default setting on the link type and enable rapid transitions.

If you set the link to shared, STP reverts to 802.1D.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree link-type** {**auto** | **point-to-point** | **shared**}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree link-type { auto point-to-point shared }	Configures the link type to be either point to point or shared. The system reads the default value from the switch connection. Half-duplex links are shared and full-duplex links are point to point. If the link type is shared, the STP reverts to 802.1D. The default is auto, which sets the link type based on the duplex setting of the interface.

This example shows how to configure the link type as point to point:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree link-type point-to-point
```

Restarting the Protocol

An MST bridge can detect that a port is at the boundary of a region when it receives a legacy BPDU or an MST BPDU that is associated with a different region. However, the STP protocol migration cannot determine whether the legacy switch, which is a switch that runs only IEEE 802.1D, has been removed from the link unless the legacy switch is the designated switch. Enter this command to restart the protocol negotiation (force the renegotiation with neighboring switches) on the entire switch or on specified interfaces.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **clear spanning-tree detected-protocol** [**interface** *interface* [*interface-num* | *port-channel*]]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# clear spanning-tree detected-protocol [interface <i>interface</i> [<i>interface-num</i> <i>port-channel</i>]]	Restarts MST on the entire switch or specified interfaces.

This example shows how to restart MST on the Ethernet interface on slot 2, port 8:

```
switch# clear spanning-tree detected-protocol interface ethernet 2/8
```

Verifying the MST Configuration

Use the following commands to display MST configuration information.

Command	Purpose
show running-config spanning-tree [all]	Displays the current spanning tree configuration.
show spanning-tree mst [options]	Displays detailed information for the current MST configuration.

This example shows how to display the current MST configuration:

```
switch# show spanning-tree mst configuration
% Switch is not in mst mode
Name      [mist-attempt]
Revision  1      Instances configured 2
Instance  Vlans mapped
-----
0         1-12,14-41,43-4094
1         13,42
```




Configuring STP Extensions

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Overview, page 113](#)

Overview

Cisco has added extensions to Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) that make convergence more efficient. In some cases, even though similar functionality may be incorporated into the IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) standard, we recommend using these extensions. All of these extensions can be used with both RPVST+ and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MST).

The available extensions are spanning tree port types, Bridge Assurance, BPDU Guard, BPDU Filtering, Loop Guard, and Root Guard. Many of these features can be applied either globally or on specified interfaces.



Note

Spanning tree is used to refer to IEEE 802.1w and IEEE 802.1s. If the text is discussing the IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol, 802.1D is stated specifically.

Information About STP Extensions

Understanding STP Port Types

You can configure a spanning tree port as an edge port, a network port, or a normal port. A port can be in only one of these states at a given time. The default spanning tree port type is normal. Depending on the type of device to which the interface is connected, you can configure a spanning tree port as one of these port types.

Spanning Tree Edge Ports

Edge ports, which are connected to hosts, can be either an access port or a trunk port. The edge port interface immediately transitions to the forwarding state, without moving through the blocking or learning states. (This immediate transition was previously configured as the Cisco-proprietary feature PortFast.)

Interfaces that are connected to hosts should not receive STP bridge protocol data units (BPDUs).

**Note**

If you configure a port connected to another switch as an edge port, you might create a bridging loop.

Spanning Tree Network Ports

Network ports are connected only to switches or bridges. Configuring a port as a network port while Bridge Assurance is enabled globally, enables Bridge Assurance on that port.

**Note**

If you mistakenly configure ports that are connected to hosts or other edge devices as spanning tree network ports, those ports automatically move into the blocking state.

Spanning Tree Normal Ports

Normal ports can be connected to either hosts, switches, or bridges. These ports function as normal spanning tree ports.

The default spanning tree interface is a normal port.

Understanding Bridge Assurance

You can use Bridge Assurance to protect against certain problems that can cause bridging loops in the network. Specifically, you use Bridge Assurance to protect against a unidirectional link failure and a device that continues to forward data traffic when it is no longer running the spanning tree algorithm.

**Note**

Bridge Assurance is supported only by Rapid PVST+ and MST. Legacy 802.1D spanning tree does not support Bridge Assurance.

Bridge Assurance is enabled by default and can only be disabled globally. Also, Bridge Assurance can be enabled only on spanning tree network ports that are point-to-point links. Finally, both ends of the link must have Bridge Assurance enabled.

With Bridge Assurance enabled, BPDUs are sent out on all operational network ports, including alternate and backup ports, for each hello time period. If the port does not receive a BPDU for a specified period, the port moves into the blocking state and is not used in the root port calculation. Once that port receives a BPDU, it resumes the normal spanning tree transitions.

Understanding BPDU Guard

Enabling BPDU Guard shuts down that interface if a BPDU is received.

You can configure BPDU Guard at the interface level. When configured at the interface level, BPDU Guard shuts the port down as soon as the port receives a BPDU, regardless of the port type configuration.

When you configure BPDU Guard globally, it is effective only on operational spanning tree edge ports. In a valid configuration, LAN edge interfaces do not receive BPDUs. A BPDU that is received by an edge LAN

interface signals an invalid configuration, such as the connection of an unauthorized host or switch. BPDU Guard, when enabled globally, shuts down all spanning tree edge ports when they receive a BPDU.

BPDU Guard provides a secure response to invalid configurations, because you must manually put the LAN interface back in service after an invalid configuration.

**Note**

When enabled globally, BPDU Guard applies to all operational spanning tree edge interfaces.

Understanding BPDU Filtering

You can use BPDU Filtering to prevent the switch from sending or even receiving BPDUs on specified ports.

When configured globally, BPDU Filtering applies to all operational spanning tree edge ports. You should connect edge ports only to hosts, which typically drop BPDUs. If an operational spanning tree edge port receives a BPDU, it immediately returns to a normal spanning tree port type and moves through the regular transitions. In that case, BPDU Filtering is disabled on this port, and spanning tree resumes sending BPDUs on this port.

In addition, you can configure BPDU Filtering by the individual interface. When you explicitly configure BPDU Filtering on a port, that port does not send any BPDUs and drops all BPDUs that it receives. You can effectively override the global BPDU Filtering setting on individual ports by configuring the specific interface. This BPDU Filtering command on the interface applies to the entire interface, whether the interface is trunking or not.

**Caution**

Use care when configuring BPDU Filtering per interface. If you explicitly configuring BPDU Filtering on a port that is not connected to a host, it can result in bridging loops because the port ignores any BPDU that it receives and goes to forwarding.

If the port configuration is not set to default BPDU Filtering, the edge configuration does not affect BPDU Filtering. The following table lists all the BPDU Filtering combinations.

Table 7: BPDU Filtering Configurations

BPDU Filtering Per Port Configuration	BPDU Filtering Global Configuration	STP Edge Port Configuration	BPDU Filtering State
Default	Enabled	Enabled	EnabledThe port transmits at least 10 BPDUs. If this port receives any BPDUs, the port returns to the spanning tree normal port state and BPDU Filtering is disabled.
Default	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled
Default	Disabled	Enabled/Disabled	Disabled

BPDU Filtering Per Port Configuration	BPDU Filtering Global Configuration	STP Edge Port Configuration	BPDU Filtering State
Disable	Enabled/Disabled	Enabled/Disabled	Disabled
Enabled	Enabled/Disabled	Enabled/Disabled	Enabled Caution BPDUs are never sent and if received, they do not trigger the regular STP behavior - use with caution.

Understanding Loop Guard

Loop Guard protects networks from loops that are caused by the following:

- Network interfaces that malfunction
- Busy CPUs
- Anything that prevents the normal forwarding of BPDUs

An STP loop occurs when a blocking port in a redundant topology erroneously transitions to the forwarding state. This transition usually happens because one of the ports in a physically redundant topology (not necessarily the blocking port) stops receiving BPDUs.

Loop Guard is useful only in switched networks where devices are connected by point-to-point links. On a point-to-point link, a designated bridge cannot disappear unless it sends an inferior BPDU or brings the link down.



Note

Loop Guard can be enabled only on network and normal spanning tree port types.

You can use Loop Guard to determine if a root port or an alternate/backup root port receives BPDUs. If the port does not receive BPDUs, Loop Guard puts the port into an inconsistent state (blocking) until the port starts to receive BPDUs again. A port in the inconsistent state does not transmit BPDUs. If the port receives BPDUs again, the protocol removes its loop-inconsistent condition, and the STP determines the port state because such recovery is automatic.

Loop Guard isolates the failure and allows STP to converge to a stable topology without the failed link or bridge. Disabling Loop Guard moves all loop-inconsistent ports to the listening state.

You can enable Loop Guard on a per-port basis. When you enable Loop Guard on a port, it is automatically applied to all of the active instances or VLANs to which that port belongs. When you disable Loop Guard, it is disabled for the specified ports.

Understanding Root Guard

When you enable Root Guard on a port, Root Guard does not allow that port to become a root port. If a received BPDU triggers an STP convergence that makes that designated port become a root port, that port is put into a root-inconsistent (blocked) state. After the port stops sending superior BPDUs, the port is unblocked again. Through STP, the port moves to the forwarding state. Recovery is automatic.

Root Guard enabled on an interface applies this functionality to all VLANs to which that interface belongs.

You can use Root Guard to enforce the root bridge placement in the network. Root Guard ensures that the port on which Root Guard is enabled is the designated port. Normally, root bridge ports are all designated ports, unless two or more of the ports of the root bridge are connected. If the bridge receives superior BPDUs on a Root Guard-enabled port, the bridge moves this port to a root-inconsistent STP state. In this way, Root Guard enforces the position of the root bridge.

You cannot configure Root Guard globally.

**Note**

You can enable Root Guard on all spanning tree port types: normal, edge, and network ports.

Configuring STP Extensions

STP Extensions Configuration Guidelines

When configuring STP extensions, follow these guidelines:

- Configure all access and trunk ports connected to hosts as edge ports.
- Bridge Assurance runs only on point-to-point spanning tree network ports. You must configure each side of the link for this feature.
- Loop Guard does not run on spanning tree edge ports.
- Enabling Loop Guard on ports that are not connected to a point-to-point link will not work.
- You cannot enable Loop Guard if Root Guard is enabled.

Configuring Spanning Tree Port Types Globally

The spanning tree port type designation depends on the type of device the port is connected to, as follows:

- Edge—Edge ports are connected to hosts and can be either an access port or a trunk port.
- Network—Network ports are connected only to switches or bridges.
- Normal—Normal ports are neither edge ports nor network ports; they are normal spanning tree ports. These ports can be connected to any type of device.

You can configure the port type either globally or per interface. By default, the spanning tree port type is normal.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that you are configuring the ports correctly for the type of device to which the interface is connected.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree port type edge default**
3. switch(config)# **spanning-tree port type network default**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge default	Configures all interfaces as edge ports. Using this command assumes all ports are connected to hosts/servers. Edge ports immediately transition to the forwarding state without passing through the blocking or learning state at linkup. By default, spanning tree ports are normal port types.
Step 3	switch(config)# spanning-tree port type network default	<p>Configures all interfaces as spanning tree network ports. Using this command assumes all ports are connected to switches and bridges. If you enable Bridge Assurance, it automatically runs on network ports. By default, spanning tree ports are normal port types.</p> <p>Note If you configure interfaces connected to hosts as network ports, those ports automatically move into the blocking state.</p>

This example shows how to configure all access and trunk ports connected to hosts as spanning tree edge ports:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge default
```

This example shows how to configure all ports connected to switches or bridges as spanning tree network ports:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree port type network default
```

Configuring Spanning Tree Edge Ports on Specified Interfaces

You can configure spanning tree edge ports on specified interfaces. Interfaces configured as spanning tree edge ports immediately transition to the forwarding state without passing through the blocking or learning states on linkup.

This command has four states:

- **spanning-tree port type edge**—This command explicitly enables edge behavior on the access port.

- **spanning-tree port type edge trunk**—This command explicitly enables edge behavior on the trunk port.



Note If you enter the **spanning-tree port type edge trunk** command, the port is configured as an edge port even in the access mode.

- **spanning-tree port type normal**—This command explicitly configures the port as a normal spanning tree port and the immediate transition to the forwarding state is not enabled.
- **no spanning-tree port type**—This command implicitly enables edge behavior if you define the **spanning-tree port type edge default** command in global configuration mode. If you do not configure the edge ports globally, the **no spanning-tree port type** command is equivalent to the **spanning-tree port type disable** command.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that the interface is connected to hosts.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree port type edge**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree port type edge	Configures the specified access interfaces to be spanning edge ports. Edge ports immediately transition to the forwarding state without passing through the blocking or learning state at linkup. By default, spanning tree ports are normal port types.

This example shows how to configure the Ethernet access interface 1/4 to be a spanning tree edge port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree port type edge
```

Configuring Spanning Tree Network Ports on Specified Interfaces

You can configure spanning tree network ports on specified interfaces.

Bridge Assurance runs only on spanning tree network ports.

This command has three states:

- **spanning-tree port type network**—This command explicitly configures the port as a network port. If you enable Bridge Assurance globally, it automatically runs on a spanning tree network port.
- **spanning-tree port type normal**—This command explicitly configures the port as a normal spanning tree port and Bridge Assurance cannot run on this interface.
- **no spanning-tree port type**—This command implicitly enables the port as a spanning tree network port if you define the **spanning-tree port type network default** command in global configuration mode. If you enable Bridge Assurance globally, it automatically runs on this port.



Note

A port connected to a host that is configured as a network port automatically moves into the blocking state.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that the interface is connected to switches or routers.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** type slot/port
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree port type network**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface type slot/port	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode. The interface can be a physical Ethernet port.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree port type network	Configures the specified interfaces to be spanning network ports. If you enable Bridge Assurance, it automatically runs on network ports. By default, spanning tree ports are normal port types.

This example shows how to configure the Ethernet interface 1/4 to be a spanning tree network port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree port type network
```

Enabling BPDU Guard Globally

You can enable BPDU Guard globally by default. In this condition, the system shuts down an edge port that receives a BPDU.



Note

We recommend that you enable BPDU Guard on all edge ports.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that you have configured some spanning tree edge ports.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default	Enables BPDU Guard by default on all spanning tree edge ports. By default, global BPDU Guard is disabled.

This example shows how to enable BPDU Guard on all spanning tree edge ports:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default
```

Enabling BPDU Guard on Specified Interfaces

You can enable BPDU Guard on specified interfaces. Enabling BPDU Guard shuts down the port if it receives a BPDU.

You can configure BPDU Guard on specified interfaces as follows:

- **spanning-tree bpduguard enable**—Unconditionally enables BPDU Guard on the interface.
- **spanning-tree bpduguard disable**—Unconditionally disables BPDU Guard on the interface.

- **no spanning-tree bpduguard**—Enables BPDU Guard on the interface if it is an operational edge port and if the **spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default** command is configured.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree bpduguard {enable | disable}**
4. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no spanning-tree bpduguard**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpduguard {enable disable}	Enables or disables BPDU Guard for the specified spanning tree edge interface. By default, BPDU Guard is disabled on physical Ethernet interfaces.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# no spanning-tree bpduguard	(Optional) Disables BPDU Guard on the interface. Note Enables BPDU Guard on the interface if it is an operational edge port and if you enter the spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default command.

This example shows how to explicitly enable BPDU Guard on the Ethernet edge port 1/4:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpduguard enable
switch(config-if)# no spanning-tree bpduguard
```

Enabling BPDU Filtering Globally

You can enable BPDU Filtering globally by default on spanning tree edge ports.

If an edge port with BPDU Filtering enabled receives a BPDU, it loses its operation status and as edge port and resumes the regular STP transitions. However, this port maintains its configuration as an edge port.

**Caution**

Be careful when using this command: using it incorrectly can cause bridging loops.

**Note**

When enabled globally, BPDU Filtering is applied *only* on ports that are operational edge ports. Ports send a few BPDUs at linkup before they effectively filter outbound BPDUs. If a BPDU is received on an edge port, it immediately loses its operational edge port status and BPDU Filtering is disabled.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that you have configured some spanning tree edge ports.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree port type edge bpdupfilter default**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpdupfilter default	Enables BPDU Filtering by default on all operational spanning tree edge ports. Global BPDU Filtering is disabled by default.

This example shows how to enable BPDU Filtering on all operational spanning tree edge ports:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpdupfilter default
```

Enabling BPDU Filtering on Specified Interfaces

You can apply BPDU Filtering to specified interfaces. When enabled on an interface, that interface does not send any BPDUs and drops all BPDUs that it receives. This BPDU Filtering functionality applies to the entire interface, whether trunking or not.

**Caution**

Be careful when you enter the **spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable** command on specified interfaces. Explicitly configuring BPDU Filtering on a port that is not connected to a host can result in bridging loops because the port ignores any BPDU it receives and goes to forwarding.

You can enter this command to override the port configuration on specified interfaces.

This command has three states:

- **spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable**—Unconditionally enables BPDU Filtering on the interface.
- **spanning-tree bpdupfilter disable**—Unconditionally disables BPDU Filtering on the interface.
- **no spanning-tree bpdupfilter**—Enables BPDU Filtering on the interface if the interface is an operational edge port and if you configure the **spanning-tree port type edge bpdupfilter default** command.

**Note**

When you enable BPDU Filtering locally on a port, this feature prevents the device from receiving or sending BPDUs on this port.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree bpdupfilter** {enable | disable}
4. (Optional) switch(config-if)# **no spanning-tree bpdupfilter**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter {enable disable}	Enables or disables BPDU Filtering for the specified spanning tree edge interface. By default, BPDU Filtering is disabled.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# no spanning-tree bpdupfilter	(Optional) Disables BPDU Filtering on the interface. Note Enables BPDU Filtering on the interface if the interface is an operational spanning tree edge port and if you enter the spanning-tree port type edge bpdupfilter default command.

This example shows how to explicitly enable BPDU Filtering on the Ethernet spanning tree edge port 1/4:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch (config-if)# spanning-tree bpdupfilter enable
```

Enabling Loop Guard Globally

You can enable Loop Guard globally by default on all point-to-point spanning tree normal and network ports. Loop Guard does not run on edge ports.

Loop Guard provides additional security in the bridge network. Loop Guard prevents alternate or root ports from becoming the designated port because of a failure that could lead to a unidirectional link.



Note

Entering the Loop Guard command for the specified interface overrides the global Loop Guard command.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that you have spanning tree normal ports or have configured some network ports.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **spanning-tree loopguard default**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# spanning-tree loopguard default	Enables Loop Guard by default on all spanning tree normal and network ports. By default, global Loop Guard is disabled.

This example shows how to enable Loop Guard on all spanning tree normal or network ports:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# spanning-tree loopguard default
```

Enabling Loop Guard or Root Guard on Specified Interfaces

You can enable either Loop Guard or Root Guard on specified interfaces.

Enabling Root Guard on a port means that port cannot become a root port, and LoopGuard prevents alternate or root ports from becoming the designated port because of a failure that could lead to a unidirectional link.

Both Loop Guard and Root Guard enabled on an interface apply to all VLANs to which that interface belongs.



Note

Entering the Loop Guard command for the specified interface overrides the global Loop Guard command.

Before You Begin

Ensure that STP is configured.

Ensure that you are configuring Loop Guard on spanning tree normal or network ports.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** *type slot/port*
3. switch(config-if)# **spanning-tree guard** {**loop** | **root** | **none**}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to configure, and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# spanning-tree guard { loop root none }	Enables or disables either Loop Guard or Root Guard for the specified interface. By default, Root Guard is disabled by default, and Loop Guard on specified ports is also disabled. Note Loop Guard runs only on spanning tree normal and network interfaces.

This example shows how to enable Root Guard on Ethernet port 1/4:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch (config)# interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root
```

Verifying the STP Extension Configuration

Use the following commands to display the configuration information for the STP extensions.

Command	Purpose
show running-config spanning-tree [all]	Displays the current status of spanning tree on the switch.
show spanning-tree [<i>options</i>]	Displays selected detailed information for the current spanning tree configuration.



Configuring Flex Links

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Flex Links, page 127](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Flex Link, page 128](#)
- [Default Settings for Flex Link, page 129](#)
- [Configuring Flex Links, page 130](#)
- [Configuring Flex Link Preemption, page 131](#)
- [Verifying Flex Link Configuration, page 133](#)
- [Flex Link Configuration Examples, page 134](#)

Information About Flex Links

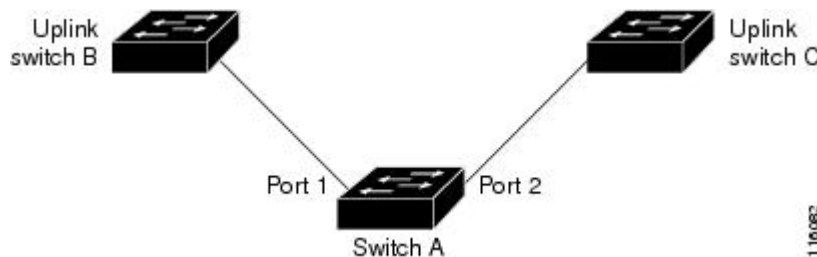
Flex links are a pair of a Layer 2 interfaces (switch ports or port channels) where one interface is configured to act as a backup to the other. The feature provides an alternative solution to the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). You can disable STP and still retain basic link redundancy. Flex links are typically configured in service provider or enterprise networks where customers do not want to run STP on the switch. If the switch is running STP, Flex Links are not necessary because STP already provides link-level redundancy or backup.

You configure Flex Links on one Layer 2 interface (the active link) by assigning another Layer 2 interface as the Flex Links or backup link. The Flex Links interface can be on the same switch. When one of the links is up and forwarding traffic, the other link is in standby mode, ready to begin forwarding traffic if the other link shuts down. At any given time only one of the interfaces is in the linkup state and forwarding traffic. If the primary link shuts down, the standby link starts forwarding traffic. When the active link comes back up, it goes into standby mode and does not forward traffic. Flex Links are not configured by default and there are no backup interfaces defined. STP is disabled on Flex Link interfaces.

In the Flex Links Configuration Example, ports 1 and 2 on switch A are connected to uplink switches B and C. Because they are configured as Flex Links, only one of the interfaces is forwarding traffic; the other is in standby mode. If port 1 is the active link, it begins forwarding traffic between port 1 and switch B; the link between port 2 (the backup link) and switch C is not forwarding traffic. If port 1 goes down, port 2 comes up and starts forwarding traffic to switch C. When port 1 comes back up, it goes into standby mode and does not forward traffic; port 2 continues forwarding traffic.

Flex Links are supported only on Layer 2 ports and port channels, not on VLANs or on Layer 3 ports.

Figure 18: Flex Links Configuration Example



Preemption

You can optionally configure a preemption mechanism to specify the preferred port for forwarding traffic. For example, you can configure a Flex Link pair with preemption mode so that when a port comes back up, if it has greater bandwidth than the peer port, then it will begin forwarding after 35 seconds (default preemption delay) and the peer port will be on standby. This is done by entering the preemption mode bandwidth and delay commands.

If a primary (forwarding) link goes down, a trap notifies the network management stations. If the standby link goes down, a trap notifies the users.

You can configure preemption in the following three modes:

- **Forced**—The active interface always preempts the backup.
- **Bandwidth**—The interface with the higher bandwidth always acts as the active interface.
- **Off**—There is no preemption; the first interface that is up is put in forwarding mode.

You can also configure the preemption delay as a specified amount of time (in seconds) before preempting a working interface for another. This ensures that the counterpart in the upstream switch has transitioned to an STP forwarding state before the switch over.

Multicast Fast-Convergence

When a Flex Link interface is learned as an mrouter port, the standby (non-forwarding) interface is also co-learned as an mrouter port if the link is up. This co-learning is for internal software state maintenance and has no relevance with respect to IGMP operations or hardware forwarding unless multicast fast-convergence is enabled. With multicast fast-convergence configured, the co-learned mrouter port is immediately added to the hardware. Flex Link supports multicast fast convergence for IPv4 IGMP.

Guidelines and Limitations for Flex Link

Consider the following guidelines and limitations when configuring Flex Links:

- You can configure only one Flex Link backup link for any active link and it must be a different interface from the active interface.
- An interface can belong to only one Flex Link pair; it can be a backup link for only one active link.

- Neither of the links can be a port that belongs to an EtherChannel. However, you can configure two port channels (EtherChannel logical interfaces) as Flex Links, and you can configure a port channel and a physical interface as Flex Links, with either the port channel or the physical interface as the active link.
- STP is disabled on Flex Link ports. A Flex Link port does not participate in STP, even if the VLANs present on the port are configured for STP. When STP is not enabled, be sure that there are no loops in the configured topology.
- Do not configure any STP features (for example, PortFast, BPDU Guard, and so forth) on Flex Links ports or the ports to which the links connect.
- vPC is not supported. Flex Link is used in place of vPC where configuration simplicity is desired and there is no need for active-active redundancy.
- MVR configuration on Flex Link ports is not supported.

Flex links cannot be configured on the following interface types:

- FEX fabric ports and FEX host ports
- FCoE (vFC) interfaces
- VNTAG (vETH) interfaces
- Interfaces with port security enabled
- Layer 3 interfaces
- SPAN destinations
- Port channel members
- Interfaces configured with Private VLANs
- Interfaces in end node mode
- Fabric path core interfaces (Layer 2 multipath)

Default Settings for Flex Link

Table 8: Flex Link Default Parameter Settings

Parameter	Definition
Multicast Fast-Convergence	Disabled
Preemption mode	Off
Preemption delay	35 seconds

Configuring Flex Links

You can configure a pair of layer 2 interfaces (switch ports or port channels) as Flex Link interfaces, where one interface is configured to act as a backup to the other.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **feature flexlink**
3. switch(config) # **interface** {*ethernet slot/port* | **port-channel** *channel-no* }
4. switch(config-if) # **switchport backup interface** {*ethernet slot/port* | **port-channel** *channel-no* } [**multicast fast-convergence** | **preemption** { *delay delay-time* | **mode** [**bandwidth** | **forced** | **off**] }]
5. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **end**
6. (Optional) switch# **show interface** *interface-id* **switchport backup**
7. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # feature flexlink	Enables Flex Link.
Step 3	switch(config) # interface { <i>ethernet slot/port</i> port-channel <i>channel-no</i> }	Specifies the Ethernet or port channel interface and enters interface configuration mode. The port channel range is 1 to 48.
Step 4	switch(config-if) # switchport backup interface { <i>ethernet slot/port</i> port-channel <i>channel-no</i> } [multicast fast-convergence preemption { <i>delay delay-time</i> mode [bandwidth forced off] }]	Specifies a physical layer 2 interface (Ethernet or port channel) as the backup interface in a Flex Link pair. When one link is forwarding traffic the other interface is in standby mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ethernet <i>slot/port</i>—Specifies the backup Ethernet interface. The <i>slot</i> number is from 1 to 255 and the <i>port</i> number is from 1 to 128. • port-channel <i>port-channel-no</i>—Specifies the backup port channel interface. The <i>port-channel-no</i> number is from 1 to 4096. • multicast—Specifies the multicast parameters. • fast-convergence—Configures fast convergence on the backup interface. • preemption—Configures a preemption scheme for a backup interface pair. • delay <i>delay-time</i>—Specifies the preemption delay. The <i>delay-time</i> range is from 1 to 300 seconds. The default is 35 seconds. • mode—Specifies the preemption mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bandwidth—Specifies that the interface with the higher available bandwidth always preempts the backup. • forced—Specifies the interface that always preempts the backup. • off—Specifies that no preemption occurs from backup to active.
Step 5	switch(config-if) # end	(Optional) Return to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	switch# show interface <i>interface-id</i> switchport backup	(Optional) Verifies the configuration.
Step 7	switch# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet switchport backup pair: Ethernet 1/1 is active interface, Ethernet 1/2 is the backup interface:

```
switch(config)# feature flexlink
switch(config)# interface ethernet1/1
switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface ethernet2/1
switch(config-if) # exit
switch(config)# interface po300
Switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface po301
switch# show ip igmp snooping mrouter
Type: S - Static, D - Dynamic, V - vPC Peer Link, I - Internal, C - Co-learned
Vlan Router-port Type Uptime Expires
4 Po300 D 00:00:12 00:04:50
4 Po301 DC 00:00:12 00:04:50
```

Configuring Flex Link Preemption

You can configure a preemption scheme for a pair of Flex Links.

Before You Begin

Enable the Flex Link feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **interface ethernet 1/48 slot/port**
3. switch(config-if) # **switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port**
4. switch(config-if) # **switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port preempt mode [bandwidth | forced | off]**
5. switch(config-if) # **switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port preempt delay delay-time**
6. (Optional) switch(config-if) # **end**
7. (Optional) switch# **show interface interface-id switchport backup**
8. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # interface ethernet 1/48 slot/port	Specifies the Ethernet interface and enters interface configuration mode. The interface is a physical Layer 2 interface or a port channel (logical interface). The <i>slot/port</i> range is from 1 to 48.
Step 3	switch(config-if) # switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port	Configures a physical Layer 2 interface (or port channel) as part of a Flex Link pair with the interface. When one link is forwarding traffic, the other interface is in standby mode.
Step 4	switch(config-if) # switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port preempt mode [bandwidth forced off]	Configures a physical Layer 2 interface (Ethernet or port channel) as part of a flex link pair. When one link is forwarding traffic the other interface is in standby mode. Configure a preemption mechanism and delay for a Flex link interface pair. You can configure the preemption as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bandwidth—Interface with higher bandwidth always acts as the active interface • forced—Active interface always preempts the backup • off—No preemption happens from active to backup
Step 5	switch(config-if) # switchport backup interface ethernet slot/port preempt delay delay-time	Configure the delay time until a port preempts another port. The default preemption delay is 35 seconds. Note Setting a delay time only works with forced and bandwidth modes.
Step 6	switch(config-if) # end	(Optional) Return to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	switch# show interface <i>interface-id</i> switchport backup	(Optional) Verifies the configuration.
Step 8	switch# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows how to sets the preemption mode to forced, sets the delay time to 50, and verifies the configuration:

```
Switch# configure terminal
switch(conf)# interface ethernet0/1
switch(conf-if)#switchport backup interface ethernet0/2 preemption mode forced
switch(conf-if)#switchport backup interface ethernet0/2 preemption delay 50
switch(conf-if)# end

switch# show interface switchport backup detail
Active Interface Backup Interface State
-----
Ethernet0/21 Ethernet0/2 Active Up/Backup Standby
Interface Pair : Gi0/1, Gi0/2
Preemption Mode : forced
Preemption Delay : 50 seconds
Bandwidth : 100000 Kbit (Gi0/1), 100000 Kbit (Gi0/2)
Mac Address Move Update Vlan : auto
```

Verifying Flex Link Configuration

Use the following commands to display flex link configuration information:

Command	Purpose
show interface switchport backup	Displays information about all switch ort Flex Link interfaces.
show interface switchport backup detail	Displays detailed information about all switch ort Flex Link interfaces.
show running-config backup show startup-config backup	Displays the running or startup configuration for backup interfaces.
show running-config flexlink show startup-config flexlink	Displays the running or startup configuration for flex link interfaces.

Flex Link Configuration Examples

This example shows how to configure a port-channel switchport backup pair with forced preemption. The active interface port-channel10 is the preferred forwarding interface:

```
switch(config)# interface port-channel10
switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface port-channel20 preempt mode forced
switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface port-channel20 preempt delay 35
```

This example shows how to configure the port channel switchport backup pair with multicast fast convergence:

```
switch(config)# interface port-channel10
switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface port-channel20 multicast fast-convergence
```

This example shows an example of multicast convergence with a pair of Flex Link interfaces: po300 and po301. A general query received on po300 makes it an mrouter port and po301 as co-learned.

```
switch(config)# interface po300
Switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface po301
switch# show ip igmp snooping mrouter
Type: S - Static, D - Dynamic, V - vPC Peer Link, I - Internal, C - Co-learned
Vlan Router-port Type Uptime Expires
4 Po300 D 00:00:12 00:04:50
4 Po301 DC 00:00:12 00:04:50
```

This example shows po300 and po301 as mrouter ports (po301 is co-learned); it is not added to the hardware table when multicast fast-convergence is disabled.

```
switch# show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 4
Type: S - Static, D - Dynamic, R - Router port
```

```
Vlan Group Address Ver Type Port list
4 */* - R Po300 Po301
224.1.1.1 v2 D Eth1/31
```

```
switch# show platform fwm info hw-stm | grep 0100.5e01.0101
1.4 0100.5e01.0101 midx 36 1:2849:0 0:0:1:0 1.0.0.0.0.24 (e:0)
```

```
switch# show platform fwm info oifl 36
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: vdc 1 gpinif 0, mcast idx 36(alt:0), oifl_type 2
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: oifl iods 8,44
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: max_iod 8192, ref count 1000 num_oifs 2, seq_num 33
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: hw pgmd: 1 msg present: 0
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: l2_bum_ref_cnt 0, l3_macg_ref_cnt 1000
oifl 36 vdc 1 oifl 36: if_indexes - Po300 Eth1/31
```

This example shows co-learned po301 is added to hardware when multicast fast-convergence is enabled:

```
switch(config)# interface po300
Switch(config-if)# switchport backup interface po301 multicast fast-convergence
```

```
switch# show platform fwm info hw-stm | grep 0100.5e01.0101
1.4 0100.5e01.0101 midx 38 1:2849:0 0:0:1:0 1.0.0.0.0.26 (e:0)
```

```
switch# show platform fwm info oifl 38
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: vdc 1 gpinif 0, mcast idx 38(alt:0), oifl_type 2
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: oifl iods 8-9,44
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: max_iod 8192, ref count 1000 num_oifs 3, seq_num 35
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: hw pgmd: 1 msg present: 0
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: l2_bum_ref_cnt 0, l3_macg_ref_cnt 1000
oifl 38 vdc 1 oifl 38: if_indexes - Po300 Po301 Eth1/31
```

This example shows the running configuration of Flex Link:

```
switch# show running-config flexlink

!Command: show running-config flexlink
!Time: Thu Jan 1 03:21:12 2011

version 5.0(3)N2(1)
feature flexlink
```

```

logging level Flexlink 5

interface port-channel500
  switchport backup interface port-channel501 preemption delay 36
  switchport backup interface port-channel501 multicast fast-convergence

interface Ethernet2/2
  switchport backup interface port-channel507 preemption mode forced

```

This example shows details about the Flex Link interface. Forced preemption is about to take place because (scheduled) is displayed.

```
switch# show interface switchport backup detail
```

Switch Backup Interface Pairs:

Active Interface	Backup Interface	State

port-channel300	port-channel301	Active Down/Backup Up
Preemption Mode : forced		
Preemption Delay : 35 seconds (default) (scheduled)		
Multicast Fast Convergence : Off		
Bandwidth : 20000000 Kbit (port-channel300), 10000000 Kbit (port-channel301)		



Configuring LLDP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Configuring LLDP, page 137](#)
- [Configuring Interface LLDP, page 138](#)

Configuring LLDP

Before You Begin

Ensure that the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) feature is enabled on the switch.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **lldp** {**holdtime** *seconds* | **reinit** *seconds* | **timer** *seconds* | **tlv-select** {**dcbxp** | **management-address** | **port-description** | **port-vlan** | **system-capabilities** | **system-description** | **system-name**}}
3. switch(config)# **no lldp** {**holdtime** | **reinit** | **timer**}
4. (Optional)switch# **show lldp**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# lldp { holdtime <i>seconds</i> reinit <i>seconds</i> timer <i>seconds</i> tlv-select { dcbxp management-address port-description port-vlan system-capabilities system-description system-name }}	Configures LLDP options. Use the holdtime option to set the length of time (10 to 255 seconds) that a device should save LLDP information received before discarding it. The default value is 120 seconds. Use the reinit option to set the length of time (1 to 10 seconds) to wait before performing LLDP initialization on any interface. The default value is 2 seconds.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>Use the timer option to set the rate (5 to 254 seconds) at which LLDP packets are sent. The default value is 30 seconds.</p> <p>Use the tlv-select option to specify the type length value (TLV). The default is enabled to send and receive all TLVs.</p> <p>Use the dcbxp option to specify the Data Center Ethernet Parameter Exchange (DCBXP) TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the management-address option to specify the management address TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the port-description option to specify the port description TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the port-vlan option to specify the port VLAN ID TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the system-capabilities option to specify the system capabilities TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the system-description option to specify the system description TLV messages.</p> <p>Use the system-name option to specify the system name TLV messages.</p>
Step 3	switch(config)# no lldp {holdtime reinit timer}	Resets the LLDP values to their defaults.
Step 4	(Optional)switch# show lldp	Displays LLDP configurations.

This example shows how to configure the global LLDP hold time to 200 seconds:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# lldp holdtime 200
switch(config)#
```

This example shows how to enable LLDP to send or receive the management address TLVs:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# lldp tlv-select management-address
switch(config)#
```

Configuring Interface LLDP

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface type slot/port**
3. switch(config-if)# **[no] lldp {receive | transmit}**
4. (Optional) switch# **show lldp {interface | neighbors [detail | interface | system-detail] | timers | traffic}**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Selects the interface to change.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# [no] lldp { receive transmit }	Sets the selected interface to either receive or transmit. The no form of the command disables the LLDP transmit or receive.
Step 4	switch# show lldp { interface neighbors [detail interface system-detail] timers traffic }	(Optional) Displays LLDP configurations.

This example shows how to set an interface to transmit LLDP packets:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/2
switch(config-if)# lldp transmit
```

This example shows how to configure an interface to disable LLDP:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/2
switch(config-if)# no lldp transmit
switch(config-if)# no lldp receive
```

This example shows how to display LLDP interface information:

```
switch# show lldp interface ethernet 1/2
tx_enabled: TRUE
rx_enabled: TRUE
dcbx_enabled: TRUE
Port MAC address: 00:0d:ec:a3:5f:48
Remote Peers Information
No remote peers exist
```

This example shows how to display LLDP neighbor information:

```
switch# show lldp neighbors
LLDP Neighbors
Remote Peers Information on interface Eth1/40
Remote peer's MSAP: length 12 Bytes:
00 c0 dd 0e 5f 3a 00 c0 dd 0e 5f 3a
LLDP TLV's
LLDP TLV type:Chassis ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Port ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Time to Live LLDP TLV Length: 2
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 55
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 5
LLDP TLV type:END of LLDPDU LLDP TLV Length: 0
Remote Peers Information on interface Eth1/34
Remote peer's MSAP: length 12 Bytes:
00 0d ec a3 27 40 00 0d ec a3 27 69
LLDP TLV's
LLDP TLV type:Chassis ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Port ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Time to Live LLDP TLV Length: 2
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 55
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 5
LLDP TLV type:END of LLDPDU LLDP TLV Length: 0
Remote Peers Information on interface Eth1/33
```

```

Remote peer's MSAP: length 12 Bytes:
00 0d ec a3 27 40 00 0d ec a3 27 68
LLDP TLV's
LLDP TLV type:Chassis ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Port ID LLDP TLV Length: 7
LLDP TLV type:Time to Live LLDP TLV Length: 2
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 55
LLDP TLV type:LLDP Organizationally Specific LLDP TLV Length: 5
LLDP TLV type:END of LLDPDU LLDP TLV Length: 0

```

This example shows how to display the system details about LLDP neighbors:

```

switch# sh lldp neighbors system-detail
Capability codes:
(R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
(W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other
Device ID Local Intf Chassis ID PortID Hold-time Capability

switch-2 Eth1/7 0005.73b7.37ce Eth1/7 120 B
switch-3 Eth/9 0005.73b7.37d0 Eth1/9 120 B
switch-4 Eth1/10 0005.73b7.37d1 Eth1/10 120 B
Total entries displayed: 3

```

This example shows how to display LLDP timer information:

```

switch# show lldp timers
LLDP Timers
holdtime 120 seconds
reinit 2 seconds
msg_tx_interval 30 seconds

```

This example shows how to display information about LLDP counters:

```

switch# show lldp traffic
LLDP traffic statistics:

Total frames out: 8464
Total Entries aged: 6
Total frames in: 6342
Total frames received in error: 2
Total frames discarded: 2
Total TLVs unrecognized: 0

```



Configuring MAC Address Tables

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About MAC Addresses, page 141](#)
- [Configuring MAC Addresses, page 141](#)
- [Verifying the MAC Address Configuration, page 143](#)

Information About MAC Addresses

To switch frames between LAN ports, the switch maintains an address table. When the switch receives a frame, it associates the media access control (MAC) address of the sending network device with the LAN port on which it was received.

The switch dynamically builds the address table by using the MAC source address of the frames received. When the switch receives a frame for a MAC destination address not listed in its address table, it floods the frame to all LAN ports of the same VLAN except the port that received the frame. When the destination station replies, the switch adds its relevant MAC source address and port ID to the address table. The switch then forwards subsequent frames to a single LAN port without flooding all LAN ports.

You can also enter a MAC address, which is termed a static MAC address, into the table. These static MAC entries are retained across a reboot of the switch.

Configuring MAC Addresses

Configuring Static MAC Addresses

You can configure static MAC addresses for the switch. These addresses can be configured in interface configuration mode or in VLAN configuration mode.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config) # **mac-address-table static** *mac_address* **vlan** *vlan-id* {**drop** | **interface** {*type slot/port*} | **port-channel** *number*} [**auto-learn**]
3. (Optional) switch(config)# **no mac address-table static** *mac_address* **vlan** *vlan-id*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # mac-address-table static <i>mac_address</i> vlan <i>vlan-id</i> { drop interface { <i>type slot/port</i> } port-channel <i>number</i> } [auto-learn]	Specifies a static address to add to the MAC address table. If you enable the auto-learn option, the switch will update the entry if the same MAC address is seen on a different port.
Step 3	switch(config)# no mac address-table static <i>mac_address</i> vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	(Optional) Deletes the static entry from the MAC address table. Use the mac address-table static command to assign a static MAC address to a virtual interface.

This example shows how to put a static entry in the MAC address table:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # mac address-table static 12ab.47dd.ff89 vlan 3 interface ethernet 1/4
switch(config) #
```

Configuring the Aging Time for the MAC Table

You can configure the amount of time that an entry (the packet source MAC address and port that packet ingresses) remains in the MAC table. MAC aging time can be configured in either interface configuration mode or in VLAN configuration mode.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **mac-address-table aging-time** *seconds* [**vlan** *vlan_id*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# mac-address-table aging-time <i>seconds</i> [vlan <i>vlan_id</i>]	Specifies the time before an entry ages out and is discarded from the MAC address table.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The <i>seconds</i> range is from 0 to 1000000. The default is 300 seconds for Cisco NX-OS 5500 and 1800 for Cisco NX-OS 5600 and 6000 series. Entering the value 0 disables the MAC aging. If a VLAN is not specified, the aging specification applies to all VLANs.

This example shows how to set the aging time for entries in the MAC address table to 300 seconds:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # mac-address-table aging-time 300
switch(config) #
```

Clearing Dynamic Addresses from the MAC Table

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **clear mac-address-table dynamic** {address *mac-addr*} {interface [*type slot/port* | *port-channel number*] {vlan *vlan-id*}

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# clear mac-address-table dynamic {address <i>mac-addr</i> } {interface [<i>type slot/port</i> <i>port-channel number</i>] {vlan <i>vlan-id</i> }	Clears the dynamic address entries from the MAC address table.

Verifying the MAC Address Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Table 9: MAC Address Configuration Verification Commands

Command	Purpose
show mac-address-table aging-time	Displays the MAC address aging time for all VLANs defined in the switch.

Command	Purpose
show mac-address-table	Displays the contents of the MAC address table. Note IGMP snooping learned MAC addresses are not displayed.
show mac address-table loop-detect	Displays the currently configured action.

This example shows how to display the MAC address table:

```
switch# show mac-address-table
VLAN      MAC Address      Type      Age      Port
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1          0018.b967.3cd0    dynamic   10       Eth1/3
1          001c.b05a.5380    dynamic   200      Eth1/3
Total MAC Addresses: 2
```

This example shows how to display the current aging time:

```
switch# show mac-address-table aging-time
Vlan      Aging Time
-----+-----
1          300
13         300
42         300
```

This example shows how to display the currently configured action:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# show mac address-table loop-detect
Port Down Action Mac Loop Detect : enabled
```

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no mac address-table loop-detect port-down
switch(config)# show mac address-table loop-detect
Port Down Action Mac Loop Detect : disabled
```




Configuring IGMP Snooping

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About IGMP Snooping, page 145](#)
- [Configuring IGMP Snooping Parameters, page 148](#)
- [Verifying the IGMP Snooping Configuration, page 151](#)

Information About IGMP Snooping

The IGMP snooping software examines IGMP protocol messages within a VLAN to discover which interfaces are connected to hosts or other devices interested in receiving this traffic. Using the interface information, IGMP snooping can reduce bandwidth consumption in a multiaccess LAN environment to avoid flooding the entire VLAN. The IGMP snooping feature tracks which ports are attached to multicast-capable routers to help it manage the forwarding of IGMP membership reports. The IGMP snooping software responds to topology change notifications.



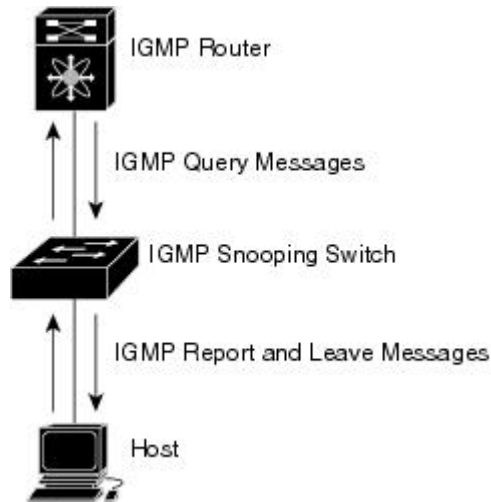
Note

IGMP snooping is supported on all Ethernet interfaces. The term *snooping* is used because Layer 3 control plane packets are intercepted and influence Layer 2 forwarding decisions.

Cisco NX-OS supports IGMPv2 and IGMPv3. IGMPv2 supports IGMPv1, and IGMPv3 supports IGMPv2. Although not all features of an earlier version of IGMP are supported, the features related to membership query and membership report messages are supported for all IGMP versions.

The following figure shows an IGMP snooping switch that is located between the host and the IGMP router. The IGMP snooping switch snoops the IGMP membership reports and leave messages and forwards them only when necessary to the connected IGMP routers.

Figure 19: IGMP Snooping Switch



Note

The switch supports IGMPv3 snooping based only on the destination multicast MAC address. It does not support snooping based on the source MAC address or on proxy reports.

The Cisco NX-OS IGMP snooping software supports optimized multicast flooding (OMF) that forwards unknown traffic to routers only and performs no data driven state creation. For more information about IGMP snooping, see <http://tools.ietf.org/wg/magma/draft-ietf-magma-snoop/rfc4541.txt>.

IGMPv1 and IGMPv2

Both IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 support membership report suppression, which means that if two hosts on the same subnet want to receive multicast data for the same group, the host that receives a member report from the other host suppresses sending its report. Membership report suppression occurs for hosts that share a port.

If no more than one host is attached to each VLAN switch port, you can configure the fast leave feature in IGMPv2. The fast leave feature does not send last member query messages to hosts. As soon as the software receives an IGMP leave message, the software stops forwarding multicast data to that port.

IGMPv1 does not provide an explicit IGMP leave message, so the software must rely on the membership message timeout to indicate that no hosts remain that want to receive multicast data for a particular group.



Note

Cisco NX-OS ignores the configuration of the last member query interval when you enable the fast leave feature because it does not check for remaining hosts.

IGMPv3

The IGMPv3 snooping implementation on the switch forwards IGMPv3 reports to allow the upstream multicast router to do source-based filtering.

By default, the software tracks hosts on each VLAN port. The explicit tracking feature provides a fast leave mechanism. Because every IGMPv3 host sends membership reports, a report suppression feature limits the amount of traffic the switch sends to other multicast-capable routers. When report suppression is enabled, and no IGMPv1 or IGMPv2 hosts request the same group, the software provides proxy reporting. The proxy feature builds the group state from membership reports from the downstream hosts and generates membership reports in response to queries from upstream queriers.

Even though the IGMPv3 membership reports provide a full accounting of group members on a LAN segment, when the last host leaves, the software sends a membership query. You can configure the parameter last member query interval. If no host responds before the timeout, the software removes the group state.

IGMP Snooping Querier

When there is no multicast router in the VLAN to originate the queries, you must configure an IGMP snooping querier to send membership queries.

When an IGMP snooping querier is enabled, it sends out periodic IGMP queries that trigger IGMP report messages from hosts that want to receive IP multicast traffic. IGMP snooping listens to these IGMP reports to establish appropriate forwarding.

Currently, you can configure the same SVI IP address for the switch querier and the IGMP snooping querier. Both queriers will then be active at the same time, and both queriers will send general queries to the VLAN periodically. To prevent this from happening, ensure that you use different IP addresses for the IGMP snooping querier and the switch querier.

IGMP Forwarding

The control plane of the Cisco Nexus device is able to detect IP addresses but forwarding occurs using the MAC address only.

When a host connected to the switch wants to join an IP multicast group, it sends an unsolicited IGMP join message, specifying the IP multicast group to join. Alternatively, when the switch receives a general query from a connected router, it forwards the query to all interfaces, physical and virtual, in the VLAN. Hosts wanting to join the multicast group respond by sending a join message to the switch. The switch CPU creates a multicast forwarding table entry for the group if it is not already present. The CPU also adds the interface where the join message was received to the forwarding table entry. The host associated with that interface receives multicast traffic for that multicast group.

The router sends periodic multicast general queries and the switch forwards these queries through all ports in the VLAN. Interested hosts respond to the queries. If at least one host in the VLAN wants to receive multicast traffic, the router continues forwarding the multicast traffic to the VLAN. The switch forwards multicast group traffic to only those hosts listed in the forwarding table for that multicast group.

When hosts want to leave a multicast group, they can either silently leave, or they can send a leave message. When the switch receives a leave message from a host, it sends a group-specific query to determine if any other devices connected to that interface are interested in traffic for the specific multicast group. The switch then updates the forwarding table for that MAC group so that only those hosts interested in receiving multicast

traffic for the group are listed in the forwarding table. If the router receives no reports from a VLAN, it removes the group for the VLAN from its IGMP cache.

Configuring IGMP Snooping Parameters

To manage the operation of the IGMP snooping process, you can configure the optional IGMP snooping parameters described in the following table.

Table 10: IGMP Snooping Parameters

Parameter	Description
IGMP snooping	Enables IGMP snooping on a per-VLAN basis. The default is enabled. Note If the global setting is disabled, all VLANs are treated as disabled, whether they are enabled or not.
Explicit tracking	Tracks IGMPv3 membership reports from individual hosts for each port on a per-VLAN basis. The default is enabled.
Fast leave	Enables the software to remove the group state when it receives an IGMP Leave report without sending an IGMP query message. This parameter is used for IGMPv2 hosts when no more than one host is present on each VLAN port. The default is disabled.
Last member query interval	Sets the interval that the software waits after sending an IGMP query to verify that no hosts that want to receive a particular multicast group remain on a network segment. If no hosts respond before the last member query interval expires, the software removes the group from the associated VLAN port. Values range from 1 to 25 seconds. The default is 1 second.
Snooping querier	Configures a snooping querier on an interface when there is no multicast router in the VLAN to generate queries. The default is disabled.
Report suppression	Limits the membership report traffic sent to multicast-capable routers. When you disable report suppression, all IGMP reports are sent as is to multicast-capable routers. The default is enabled.
Multicast router	Configures a static connection to a multicast router. The interface to the router must be in the selected VLAN.

Parameter	Description
Multicast router vpc-peer-link	<p>Configures a static connection to a virtual port channel (vPC) peer link.</p> <p>By default, the vPC peer link is considered a multicast router port and the multicast packet is sent to the peer link for each receiver VLAN.</p> <p>To send the multicast traffic over a vPC peer link to each receiver VLAN that has orphan ports, use the no ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link command. If you use the no ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link command, the multicast traffic is not sent over to a peer link for the source VLAN and receiver VLAN unless there is an orphan port in the VLAN. The IGMP snooping mrouter VPC peer link should also be globally disabled on the peer VPC switch.</p>
Static group	Configures an interface that belongs to a VLAN as a static member of a multicast group.

You can disable IGMP snooping either globally or for a specific VLAN.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **ip igmp snooping**
3. switch(config)# **vlan configuration** *vlan-id*
4. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping**
5. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping explicit-tracking**
6. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping fast-leave**
7. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping last-member-query-interval** *seconds*
8. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping querier** *IP-address*
9. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping report-suppression**
10. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping mrouter interface** *interface*
11. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link**
12. switch(config-vlan)# **ip igmp snooping static-group** *group-ip-addr* [*source source-ip-addr*] **interface** *interface*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# ip igmp snooping	Globally enables IGMP snooping. The default is enabled. Note If the global setting is disabled, all VLANs are treated as disabled, whether they are enabled or not.
Step 3	switch(config)# vlan configuration <i>vlan-id</i>	Enters VLAN configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping	Enables IGMP snooping for the current VLAN. The default is enabled. Note If IGMP snooping is enabled globally, this command is not required.
Step 5	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping explicit-tracking	Tracks IGMPv3 membership reports from individual hosts for each port on a per-VLAN basis. The default is enabled on all VLANs.
Step 6	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping fast-leave	Supports IGMPv2 hosts that cannot be explicitly tracked because of the host report suppression mechanism of the IGMPv2 protocol. When you enable fast leave, the IGMP software assumes that no more than one host is present on each VLAN port. The default is disabled for all VLANs.
Step 7	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping last-member-query-interval <i>seconds</i>	Removes the group from the associated VLAN port if no hosts respond to an IGMP query message before the last member query interval expires. Values range from 1 to 25 seconds. The default is 1 second.
Step 8	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping querier <i>IP-address</i>	Configures a snooping querier when you do not enable PIM because multicast traffic does not need to be routed. The IP address is used as the source in messages. The default is disabled.
Step 9	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping report-suppression	Limits the membership report traffic sent to multicast-capable routers. When you disable report suppression, all IGMP reports are sent as is to multicast-capable routers. The default is enabled.
Step 10	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping mrouter interface <i>interface</i>	Configures a static connection to a multicast router. The interface to the router must be in the selected VLAN. You can specify the interface by type and number.
Step 11	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link	Configures a static connection to a virtual port channel (vPC) peer link. By default, the vPC peer link is considered as a multicast router port and the multicast packet is sent to the peer link for each receiver VLAN. To send the multicast traffic over a vPC peer link to each receiver VLAN that has orphan ports, use the no ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link command. The IGMP snooping mrouter VPC peer link should also be globally disabled on the peer VPC switch.
Step 12	switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping static-group <i>group-ip-addr</i> [source <i>source-ip-addr</i>] interface <i>interface</i>	Configures an interface belonging to a VLAN as a static member of a multicast group. You can specify the interface by type and number.

This example shows how to configure IGMP snooping parameters for a VLAN:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# vlan configuration 5
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping last-member-query-interval 3
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping querier 172.20.52.106
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping explicit-tracking
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping fast-leave
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping report-suppression
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping mrouter interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link
switch(config-vlan)# ip igmp snooping static-group 230.0.0.1 interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-vlan)# end
```

This example shows how to configure a static connection to a vPC peer link and how to remove the static connection to a vPC peer link:

```
switch(config)# ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link
switch(config)# no ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link
Warning: IGMP Snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link should be globally disabled on peer VPC switch
as well.
switch(config)#
```

Verifying the IGMP Snooping Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the IGMP snooping configuration.

Command	Description
show ip igmp snooping [[vlan] <i>vlan-id</i>]	Displays IGMP snooping configuration by VLAN.
show ip igmp snooping groups [[vlan] <i>vlan-id</i>] [detail]	Displays IGMP snooping information about groups by VLAN.
show ip igmp snooping querier [[vlan] <i>vlan-id</i>]	Displays IGMP snooping queriers by VLAN.
show ip igmp snooping mrouter [[vlan] <i>vlan-id</i>]	Displays multicast router ports by VLAN.
show ip igmp snooping explicit-tracking vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Displays IGMP snooping explicit tracking information by VLAN.

This example shows how to verify the IGMP snooping parameters:

```
switch# show ip igmp snooping
Global IGMP Snooping Information:
  IGMP Snooping enabled
IGMP Snooping information for vlan 1
  IGMP snooping enabled
  IGMP querier none
  Switch-querier disabled
  Explicit tracking enabled
  Fast leave disabled
  Report suppression enabled
  Router port detection using PIM Hellos, IGMP Queries
  Number of router-ports: 0
  Number of groups: 0
IGMP Snooping information for vlan 5
IGMP snooping enabled
  IGMP querier present, address: 192.0.2.1, version: 3
  Querier interval: 125 secs
```

```
Querier last member query interval: 10 secs
Querier robustness: 2
Switch-querier enabled, address 192.0.2.1, currently running
Explicit tracking enabled
Fast leave enabled
Report suppression enabled
Router port detection using PIM Hellos, IGMP Queries
Number of router-ports: 1
Number of groups: 1
```




Configuring MVR

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About MVR, page 153](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for MVR, page 154](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for MVR, page 154](#)
- [Default MVR Settings, page 155](#)
- [Configuring MVR, page 155](#)
- [Verifying the MVR Configuration, page 158](#)

Information About MVR

MVR Overview

In a typical Layer 2 multi-VLAN network, subscribers to a multicast group can be on multiple VLANs. To maintain data isolation between these VLANs, the multicast stream on the source VLAN must be passed to a router, which replicates the stream on all subscriber VLANs, wasting upstream bandwidth.

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) allows a Layer 2 switch to forward the multicast data from a source on a common assigned VLAN to the subscriber VLANs, conserving upstream bandwidth by bypassing the router. The switch forwards multicast data for MVR IP multicast streams only to MVR ports on which hosts have joined, either by IGMP reports or by MVR static configuration. The switch forwards IGMP reports received from MVR hosts only to the source port. For other traffic, VLAN isolation is preserved.

MVR requires at least one VLAN to be designated as the common VLAN to carry the multicast stream from the source. More than one such multicast VLAN (MVR VLAN) can be configured in the system, and you can configure a global default MVR VLAN as well as interface-specific default MVR VLANs. Each multicast group using MVR is assigned to an MVR VLAN.

MVR allows a subscriber on a port to subscribe and unsubscribe to a multicast stream on the MVR VLAN by sending IGMP join and leave messages. IGMP leave messages from an MVR group are handled according to the IGMP configuration of the VLAN on which the leave message is received. If IGMP fast leave is enabled

on the VLAN, the port is removed immediately; otherwise, an IGMP query is sent to the group to determine whether other hosts are present on the port.

MVR Interoperation with Other Features

MVR and IGMP Snooping

Although MVR operates on the underlying mechanism of IGMP snooping, the two features operate independently of each other. One feature can be enabled or disabled without affecting the operation of the other feature. If IGMP snooping is disabled globally or on a VLAN, and if MVR is enabled on the VLAN, IGMP snooping is internally enabled on the VLAN. Joins received for MVR groups on non-MVR receiver ports, or joins received for non-MVR groups on MVR receiver ports, are processed by IGMP snooping.

MVR and vPC

- As with IGMP snooping, IGMP control messages received by virtual port channel (vPC) peer switches are exchanged between the peers, allowing synchronization of MVR group information.
- MVR configuration must be consistent between the peers.
- The **no ip igmp snooping mrouter vpc-peer-link** command applies to MVR. With this command, multicast traffic is not sent over to a peer link for the source VLAN and receiver VLAN unless there is an orphan port in the VLAN.
- The **show mvr member** command shows the multicast group on the vPC peer switch. However, the vPC peer switch does not show the multicast groups if it does not receive the IGMP membership report of the groups.

Licensing Requirements for MVR

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

Guidelines and Limitations for MVR

When configuring MVR, follow these guidelines:

- MVR is supported only on Layer 2 Ethernet ports, such as individual ports, port channels, and virtual Ethernet (vEth) ports.
- MVR receiver ports can only be access ports; they cannot be trunk ports. MVR source ports can be either access or trunk ports.

- MVR configuration on Flex Link ports is not supported.
- Priority tagging is not supported on MVR receiver ports.
- When using private VLANs (PVLANS), you cannot configure a secondary VLAN as the MVR VLAN.
- The total number of MVR VLANs cannot exceed 250.

**Note**

During and in-service software upgrade (ISSU), MVR IGMP membership for the MVR receiver ports may timeout because the joins are not forwarded to the upstream router. In order to avoid a timeout, the querier timer on the upstream router or the network querier should be increased to accommodate an ISSU.

Default MVR Settings

Parameter	Default
MVR	Disabled globally and per interface
Global MVR VLAN	None configured
Interface (per port) default	Neither a receiver nor a source port

Configuring MVR

Configuring MVR Global Parameters

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **[no] mvr**
3. switch(config)# **[no] mvr-vlan vlan-id**
4. switch(config)# **[no] mvr-group addr[/mask] [count groups] [vlan vlan-id]**
5. (Optional) switch(config)# **end**
6. (Optional) switch# **clear mvr counters [source-ports | receiver-ports]**
7. (Optional) switch# **show mvr**
8. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] mvr	Globally enables MVR. The default is disabled. Use the no form of the command to disable MVR.
Step 3	switch(config)# [no] mvr-vlan vlan-id	Specifies the global default MVR VLAN. The MVR VLAN is the source of the multicast message that subsequent receivers subscribe to. The range is 1 to 4094. Use the no form of the command to clear the MVR VLAN.
Step 4	switch(config)# [no] mvr-group addr[/mask] [count groups] [vlan vlan-id]	Adds a multicast group at the specified IPv4 address and (optional) netmask length to the global default MVR VLAN. You can repeat this command to add additional groups to the MVR VLAN. The IP address is entered in the format <i>a.b.c.d/m</i> , where <i>m</i> is the number of bits in the netmask, from 1 to 31. (Optional) You can specify a number of MVR groups using contiguous multicast IP addresses starting with the specified IP address. Use the count keyword followed by a number from 1 to 64. (Optional) You can explicitly specify an MVR VLAN for the group by using the vlan keyword; otherwise, the group is assigned to the default MVR VLAN. Use the no form of the command to clear the group configuration.
Step 5	switch(config)# end	(Optional) Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	switch# clear mvr counters [source-ports receiver-ports]	(Optional) Clears MVR IGMP packet counters.
Step 7	switch# show mvr	(Optional) Displays the global MVR configuration.
Step 8	switch# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows how to globally enable MVR and configure the global parameters:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# mvr
switch(config-mvr)# mvr-vlan 100
switch(config-mvr)# mvr-group 192.0.2.1 count 4
switch(config-mvr)# mvr-group 192.0.2.240/28 vlan 101
switch(config-mvr)# mvr-group 192.0.2.6 vlan 340
switch(config-mvr)# end
switch# show mvr
MVR Status           : enabled
Global MVR VLAN      : 100

```

```

Number of MVR VLANs : 3
switch# copy running-config startup-config

```

Configuring MVR Interfaces

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. **mvr**
3. **interface** {*ethernet type slot/port* | **port-channel** *channel-number* | **vethernet** *number*}
4. [**no**] **mvr-type** {*source* | *receiver*}
5. (Optional) [**no**] **mvr-vlan** *vlan-id*
6. (Optional) [**no**] **mvr-group** *addr[/mask]* [**vlan** *vlan-id*]
7. (Optional) **end**
8. (Optional) switch# **copy running-config startup-config**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mvr	Globally enables MVR. The default is disabled. Note If MVR is enabled globally, then this command is not required.
Step 3	interface { <i>ethernet type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>channel-number</i> vethernet <i>number</i> }	Specifies the Layer 2 port to configure, and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	[no] mvr-type { <i>source</i> <i>receiver</i> }	Configures an MVR port as one of these types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • source—An uplink port that sends and receives multicast data is configured as an MVR source. The port automatically becomes a static receiver of MVR multicast groups. A source port should be a member of the MVR VLAN. • receiver— An access port that is connected to a host that wants to subscribe to an MVR multicast group is configured as an MVR receiver. A receiver port receives data only when it becomes a member of the multicast group by using IGMP leave and join messages. <p>If you attempt to configure a non-MVR port with MVR characteristics, the configuration is cached and does not take effect until the port becomes an MVR port. The default port mode is non-MVR.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	<code>[no] mvr-vlan <i>vlan-id</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies an interface default MVR VLAN that overrides the global default MVR VLAN for joins received on the interface. The MVR VLAN is the source of the multicast message that subsequent receivers subscribe to. The range is 1 to 4094.
Step 6	<code>[no] mvr-group <i>addr[/mask]</i></code> <code>[vlan <i>vlan-id</i>]</code>	(Optional) Adds a multicast group at the specified IPv4 address and (optional) netmask length to the interface MVR VLAN, overriding the global MVR group configuration. You can repeat this command to add additional groups to the MVR VLAN The IP address is entered in the format <i>a.b.c.d/m</i> , where <i>m</i> is the number of bits in the netmask, from 1 to 31. (Optional) You can explicitly specify an MVR VLAN for the group by using the vlan keyword; otherwise, the group is assigned to the interface default (if specified) or global default MVR VLAN. Use the no form of the command to clear the IPv4 address and netmask.
Step 7	<code>end</code>	(Optional) Return to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	<code>switch# copy running-config startup-config</code>	(Optional) Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet port as an MVR receiver port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# mvr
switch(config-mvr)# interface ethernet 1/10
switch(config-if)# mvr-type receiver
switch(config-if)# end
switch# copy running-config startup-config
switch#
```

Verifying the MVR Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the MVR configuration:

Command	Description
<code>show mvr</code>	Displays the MVR subsystem configuration and status.
<code>show mvr groups</code>	Displays the MVR group configuration.

Command	Description
show ip igmp snooping [vlan <i>vlan-id</i>]	Displays information about IGMP snooping on the specified VLAN.
show mvr interface { ethernet <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i> }	Displays the MVR configuration on the specified interface.
show mvr members [count]	Displays the number and details of all MVR receiver members.
show mvr members interface { ethernet <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i> }	Displays details of MVR members on the specified interface.
show mvr members vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Displays details of MVR members on the specified VLAN.
show mvr receiver-ports [ethernet <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i>]	Displays all MVR receiver ports on all interfaces or on the specified interface.
show mvr source-ports [ethernet <i>type slot/port</i> port-channel <i>number</i>]	Displays all MVR source ports on all interfaces or on the specified interface.

This example shows how to verify the MVR parameters:

```
switch# show mvr
MVR Status           : enabled
Global MVR VLAN      : 100
Number of MVR VLANs  : 4
```

This example shows how to verify the MVR group configuration:

```
switch# show mvr groups
* - Global default MVR VLAN.
```

Group start	Group end	Count Mask	MVR-VLAN	Interface
228.1.2.240	228.1.2.255	/28	101	
230.1.1.1	230.1.1.4	4	*100	
235.1.1.6	235.1.1.6	1	340	
225.1.3.1	225.1.3.1	1	*100	Eth1/10

This example shows how to verify the MVR interface configuration and status:

```
switch# show mvr interface
Port      VLAN  Type      Status      MVR-VLAN
-----
Po10      100   SOURCE    ACTIVE      100-101
Po201     201   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po202     202   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po203     203   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po204     204   RECEIVER  INACTIVE    100-101,340
Po205     205   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po206     206   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po207     207   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Po208     208   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      2000-2001
Eth1/9    340   SOURCE    ACTIVE      340
Eth1/10   20    RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Eth2/2    20    RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
Eth102/1/1 102   RECEIVER  ACTIVE      100-101,340
```

```

Eth102/1/2  102  RECEIVER  INACTIVE  100-101,340
Eth103/1/1  103  RECEIVER  ACTIVE    100-101,340
Eth103/1/2  103  RECEIVER  ACTIVE    100-101,340

```

Status INVALID indicates one of the following misconfiguration:

- a) Interface is not a switchport.
- b) MVR receiver is not in access, pvlan host or pvlan promiscuous mode.
- c) MVR source is in fex-fabric mode.

This example shows how to display all MVR members:

```

switch# show mvr members
MVR-VLAN  Group Address  Status  Members
-----
100       230.1.1.1  ACTIVE  Po201 Po202 Po203 Po205 Po206
100       230.1.1.2  ACTIVE  Po205 Po206 Po207 Po208
340       235.1.1.6  ACTIVE  Eth102/1/1
101       225.1.3.1  ACTIVE  Eth1/10 Eth2/2
101       228.1.2.241 ACTIVE  Eth103/1/1 Eth103/1/2

```

This example shows how to display all MVR receiver ports on all interfaces:

```

switch# show mvr receiver-ports
Port          MVR-VLAN  Status  Joins      Leaves
              (v1,v2,v3)
-----
Po201         100       ACTIVE  8          2
Po202         100       ACTIVE  8          2
Po203         100       ACTIVE  8          2
Po204         100       INACTIVE 0          0
Po205         100       ACTIVE  10         6
Po206         100       ACTIVE  10         6
Po207         100       ACTIVE  5          0
Po208         100       ACTIVE  6          0
Eth1/10       101       ACTIVE  12         2
Eth2/2        101       ACTIVE  12         2
Eth102/1/1    340       ACTIVE  16         15
Eth102/1/2    340       INACTIVE 16         16
Eth103/1/1    101       ACTIVE  33         0
Eth103/1/2    101       ACTIVE  33         0

```

This example shows how to display all MVR source ports on all interfaces:

```

switch# show mvr source-ports
Port          MVR-VLAN  Status
-----
Po10          100       ACTIVE
Eth1/9        340       ACTIVE

```




Configuring Traffic Storm Control

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Traffic Storm Control, page 161](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Traffic Storm Control, page 163](#)
- [Configuring Traffic Storm Control, page 164](#)
- [Traffic Storm Control Example Configuration, page 165](#)
- [Default Settings for Traffic Storm Control, page 165](#)

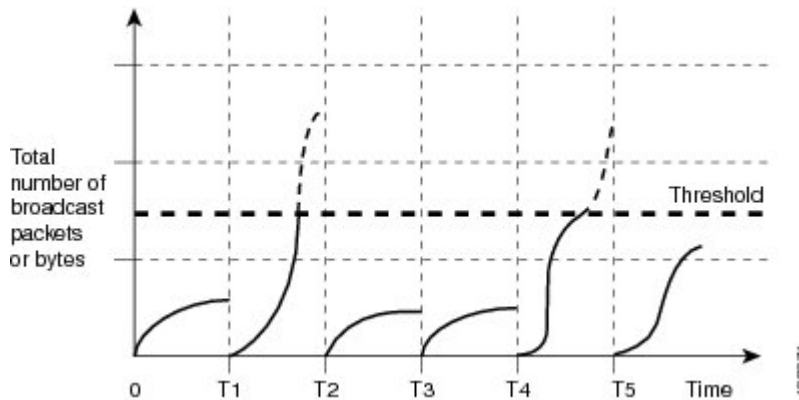
Information About Traffic Storm Control

A traffic storm occurs when packets flood the LAN, creating excessive traffic and degrading network performance. You can use the traffic storm control feature to prevent disruptions on Ethernet interfaces by a broadcast, multicast, or unknown unicast traffic storm.

Traffic storm control (also called traffic suppression) allows you to monitor the levels of the incoming broadcast, multicast, or unknown unicast traffic over a 10-microsecond interval. During this interval, the traffic level, which is a percentage of the total available bandwidth of the port, is compared with the traffic storm control level that you configured. When the ingress traffic reaches the traffic storm control level that is configured on the port, traffic storm control drops the traffic until the interval ends.

The following figure shows the broadcast traffic patterns on an Ethernet interface during a specified time interval. In this example, traffic storm control occurs between times T1 and T2 and between T4 and T5. During those intervals, the amount of broadcast traffic exceeded the configured threshold.

Figure 20: Broadcast Suppression



The traffic storm control threshold numbers and the time interval allow the traffic storm control algorithm to work with different levels of packet granularity. For example, a higher threshold allows more packets to pass through.

Traffic storm control is implemented in the hardware. The traffic storm control circuitry monitors packets that pass from an Ethernet interface to the switching bus. Using the Individual/Group bit in the packet destination address, the circuitry determines if the packet is unicast or broadcast, tracks the current count of packets within the 10-microsecond interval, and filters out subsequent packets when a threshold is reached.

Traffic storm control uses a bandwidth-based method to measure traffic. You set the percentage of total available bandwidth that the controlled traffic can use. Because packets do not arrive at uniform intervals, the 10-microsecond interval can affect the operation of traffic storm control.

The following are examples of how traffic storm control operation is affected:

- If you enable broadcast traffic storm control, and broadcast traffic exceeds the level within the 10-microsecond interval, traffic storm control drops all exceeding broadcast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable multicast traffic storm control, and the multicast traffic exceeds the level within the 10-microsecond interval, traffic storm control drops all exceeding multicast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable broadcast and multicast traffic storm control, and broadcast traffic exceeds the level within the 10-microsecond interval, traffic storm control drops all exceeding broadcast traffic until the end of the interval.
- If you enable broadcast and multicast traffic storm control, and multicast traffic exceeds the level within the 10-microsecond interval, traffic storm control drops all exceeding multicast traffic until the end of the interval.

By default, Cisco NX-OS takes no corrective action when traffic exceeds the configured level.

Guidelines and Limitations for Traffic Storm Control

When configuring the traffic storm control level, follow these guidelines and limitations:

- You can configure traffic storm control on a port-channel interface.
- You can configure traffic storm control on a fabric port or a fabric port channel that connects the switch to a Fabric Extender (FEX). Storm control configured on a FEX applies to the aggregate traffic coming in on all the ports on that FEX.

**Note**

The NIF storm control feature applies on all traffic coming in on a FEX fabric port. Traffic that comes on the FEX fabric port with the VNTAG header has an additional 6 bytes added to the original traffic. Due to these additional 6 bytes of overhead, the rate at which the traffic is policed by the storm control policer is skewed depending on the packet size of the original traffic that is ingressing on the HIF ports. The skew is larger for the smaller packet sizes compared to the larger packet sizes.

- Specify the level as a percentage of the total interface bandwidth:
 - The level can be from 0 to 100.
 - The optional fraction of a level can be from 0 to 99.
 - 100 percent means no traffic storm control.
 - 0.0 percent suppresses all traffic.
- There are local link and hardware limitations that prevent storm-control drops from being counted separately. Instead, storm-control drops are counted with other drops in the discards counter.
- Because of hardware limitations and the method by which packets of different sizes are counted, the level percentage is an approximation. Depending on the sizes of the frames that make up the incoming traffic, the actual enforced level might differ from the configured level by several percentage points.
- Applying storm control over a HIF range is not recommended. The configuration might fail for one or more interfaces in the range depending on the hardware resource availability. The result of the command is partial success in some cases.
- In the Cisco Nexus 5000 switch, storm-control does not distinguish between IP, non-IP, registered, or unregistered multicast traffic. All multicast traffic is subject to a single-multicast storm control policer when configured.
- In the Cisco Nexus 5500 switch, storm-control is applied only to unregistered or unknown multicast MAC address.
- The link-level control protocols (LACP, LLDP and so on) are not affected in case of a traffic storm. The storm control is applied to data plane traffic only.
- The burst size values are:
 - For a 10G port, 48.68 Mbytes/390Mbits
 - For a 1G port, 25 Mbytes/200Mbits

Configuring Traffic Storm Control

You can set the percentage of total available bandwidth that the controlled traffic can use.



Note

Traffic storm control uses a 10-microsecond interval that can affect the operation of traffic storm control.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. switch# **configure terminal**
2. switch(config)# **interface** {*ethernet slot/port* | *port-channel number*}
3. switch(config-if)# **storm-control** [**broadcast** | **multicast** | **unicast**] **level** *percentage* [*fraction*]

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface { <i>ethernet slot/port</i> <i>port-channel number</i> }	Enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# storm-control [broadcast multicast unicast] level <i>percentage</i> [<i>fraction</i>]	Configures traffic storm control for traffic on the interface. The default state is disabled.

This example shows how to configure traffic storm control for port channels 122 and 123:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface port-channel 122, port-channel 123
switch(config-if-range) # storm-control unicast level 66.75
switch(config-if-range) # storm-control multicast level 66.75
switch(config-if-range) # storm-control broadcast level 66.75
switch(config-if-range) #
```

Verifying the Traffic Storm Control Configuration

Use the following commands to display traffic storm control configuration information:

Command	Purpose
show interface [<i>ethernet slot/port</i> <i>port-channel number</i>] counters storm-control	Displays the traffic storm control configuration for the interfaces. Note Traffic storm control uses a 10-microsecond interval that can affect the operation of traffic storm control.
show running-config interface	Displays the traffic storm control configuration.

**Note**

When a storm event occurs on a port and the packets are dropped due to storm control configuration, a syslog message is generated to indicate that the storm event has started. An additional syslog message is generated when the storm event ends and the packet are no longer dropped.

Traffic Storm Control Example Configuration

This example shows how to configure traffic storm control:

Default Settings for Traffic Storm Control

The following table lists the default settings for traffic storm control parameters.

Table 11: Default Traffic Storm Control Parameters

Parameters	Default
Traffic storm control	Disabled
Threshold percentage	100



Configuring the Fabric Extender

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender, page 167](#)
- [Fabric Extender Terminology, page 168](#)
- [Fabric Extender Features, page 169](#)
- [Oversubscription, page 172](#)
- [Management Model, page 172](#)
- [Forwarding Model, page 173](#)
- [Connection Model, page 173](#)
- [Port Numbering Convention, page 176](#)
- [Fabric Extender Image Management, page 176](#)
- [Fabric Extender Hardware, page 176](#)
- [Associating a Fabric Extender to a Fabric Interface, page 177](#)
- [Configuring Fabric Extender Global Features, page 181](#)
- [Enabling the Fabric Extender Locator LED, page 183](#)
- [Redistributing the Links, page 183](#)
- [Verifying the Fabric Extender Configuration, page 185](#)
- [Verifying the Chassis Management Information, page 188](#)
- [Configuring the Cisco Nexus N2248TP-E Fabric Extender, page 192](#)

Information About the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender, also known as FEX, is a highly scalable and flexible server networking solution that works with Cisco Nexus Series devices to provide high-density, low-cost connectivity for server aggregation. Scaling across 1-Gigabit Ethernet, 10-Gigabit Ethernet, unified fabric, rack, and blade server environments, the Fabric Extender is designed to simplify data center architecture and operations.

The Fabric Extender integrates with its parent switch, which is a Cisco Nexus Series device, to allow automatic provisioning and configuration taken from the settings on the parent device. This integration allows large numbers of servers and hosts to be supported by using the same feature set as the parent device with a single management domain. The Fabric Extender and its parent switch enable a large multipath, loop-free, active-active data center topology without the use of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender forwards all traffic to its parent Cisco Nexus Series device over 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric uplinks, which allows all traffic to be inspected by policies established on the Cisco Nexus Series device.

No software is included with the Fabric Extender. The software is automatically downloaded and upgraded from its parent device.

Fabric Extender Terminology

Some terms used in this document are as follows:

- Fabric interface—A 10-Gigabit Ethernet uplink port that is designated for connection from the Fabric Extender to its parent switch. A fabric interface cannot be used for any other purpose. It must be directly connected to the parent switch.



Note

A fabric interface includes the corresponding interface on the parent switch. This interface is enabled when you enter the **switchport mode fex-fabric** command.

- Port channel fabric interface—A port channel uplink connection from the Fabric Extender to its parent switch. This connection consists of fabric interfaces that are bundled into a single logical channel.
- Host interface—An Ethernet host interface for connection to a server or host system.



Note

Do not connect a bridge or switch to a host interface. These interfaces are designed to provide end host or server connectivity.



Note

On Cisco Nexus 2348TQ and Nexus 2348UPQ FEX, if a port channel is used to connect a parent switch with a Fabric Extender device, the port channels can have maximum of 8 ports.

The Nexus 2348 FEX devices have a total of 6 * 40 Gigabit Ethernet uplink ports towards the parent switch. If these are used with native 40G uplinks port on a parent switch, then there is no limitation. All 6 ports can be used in either single homed or dual homed configuration. You can also use 40 Gigabit Ethernet uplink ports on the N2348 Fabric Extender device with 10 Gigabit Ethernet ports on the parent switch when used with the appropriate cabling. A maximum of 8 ports can be added to the port channel between the parent switch and Fabric Extender device. If it is a dual homed setup, VPC to the Fabric Extender device, only 4 ports per switch are allowed in the port channel.

- Port channel host interface—A port channel host interface for connection to a server or host system.

Fabric Extender Features

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender allows a single switch—and a single consistent set of switch features—to be supported across a large number of hosts and servers. By supporting a large server-domain under a single management entity, policies can be enforced more efficiently.

Some of the features of the parent switch cannot be extended onto the Fabric Extender.

Layer 2 Host Interfaces

The Fabric Extender provides connectivity for computer hosts and other edge devices in the network fabric.

Follow these guidelines when connecting devices to Fabric Extender host interfaces:

- All Fabric Extender host interfaces run as spanning tree edge ports with BPDU Guard enabled and you cannot configure them as spanning tree network ports.
- You can connect servers that use active/standby teaming, 802.3ad port channels, or other host-based link redundancy mechanisms to Fabric Extender host interfaces.
- Any device that is running spanning tree connected to a Fabric Extender host interface results in that host interface being placed in an error-disabled state when a BPDU is received.
- You can connect only virtual switches that leverages a link redundancy mechanism not dependent on spanning tree such as Cisco FlexLink or vPC (with the BPDU Filter enabled) to a Fabric Extender host interface. Because spanning tree is not used to eliminate loops, you should ensure a loop-free topology below the Fabric Extender host interfaces.

You can enable host interfaces to accept Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) packets. This protocol only works when it is enabled for both ends of a link.

**Note**

CDP is not supported on fabric interfaces when the Fabric Extender is configured in a virtual port channel (vPC) topology.

Ingress and egress packet counters are provided on each host interface.

For more information about BPDU Guard, see [Understanding BPDU Guard](#), on page 114 .

Host Port Channel

The Cisco Nexus 2248TP, Cisco Nexus 2232PP, Cisco Nexus 2224TP, , Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Fujitsu (N2K-B22FTS-P), Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Dell (N2K-B22DELL-P), and Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for HP (N2K-B22HP-P) support port channel host interface configurations. Up to eight interfaces can be combined in an port channel. The port channel can be configured with or without LACP.

VLANs and Private VLANs

The Fabric Extender supports Layer 2 VLAN trunks and IEEE 802.1Q VLAN encapsulation. Host interfaces can be members of private VLANs with the following restrictions:

- You can configure a host interface as an isolated or community access port only.
- You cannot configure a host interface as a promiscuous port.
- You cannot configure a host interface as a private VLAN trunk port.

For more information about VLANs, see the chapter in this guide on Configuring VLANs.

Virtual Port Channels

With a virtual port channel (vPC), you can configure topologies where a Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender is connected to a pair of parent switches or a pair of Fabric Extenders are connected to a single parent switch. The vPC can provide multipath connections, which allow you to create redundancy between the nodes on your network.



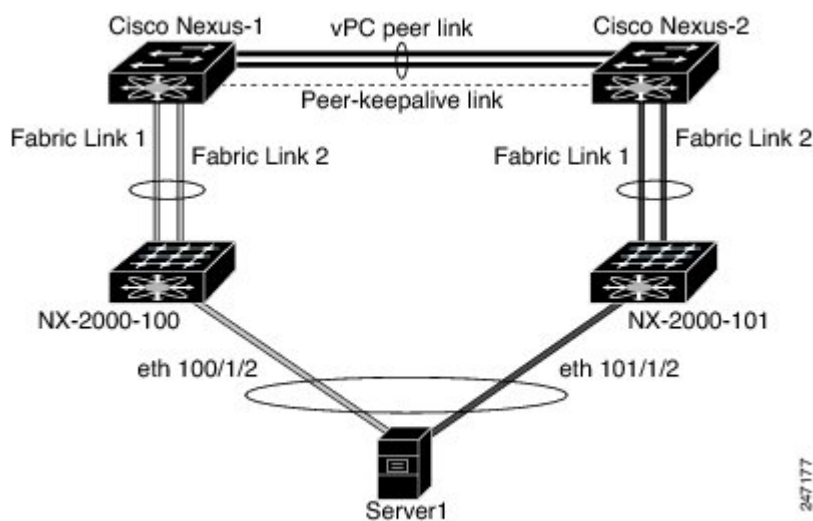
Note

A port channel between two FEXs that are connected to the same Cisco Nexus device is not supported. Virtual port channels (vPCs) cannot span two different FEXs when connected to the same Cisco Nexus device.

The following vPC topologies are possible with the Fabric Extender:

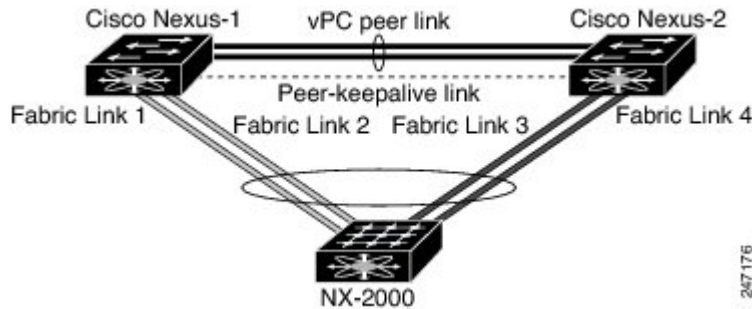
- The parent switches are connected single homed to Fabric Extenders that are subsequently connected to servers with dual interfaces (see the following figure).

Figure 21: Single Homed Fabric Extender vPC Topology



- The Fabric Extender is connected dual homed to two upstream parent switches and connected downstream to single homed servers (see the following figure).

Figure 22: Dual Homed Fabric Extender vPC Topology



This configuration is also called an Active-Active topology.



Note

Port channels between two Fabric Extenders connected to the same Cisco Nexus device is not supported. vPCs cannot span two different Fabric Extenders that are connected to the same physical Cisco Nexus device.

Fibre Channel over Ethernet Support

The Cisco Nexus 2232PP supports Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) with the following restrictions:

- Only FCoE Initialization Protocol (FIP) enabled converged network adapters (CNAs) are supported on the Fabric Extender.
- Binding to a port channel is limited to only one member in the port channel.

For configuration details, see the Fibre Channel over Ethernet Configuration Guide for the Nexus software release that you are using. The available versions of this document can be found at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps9670/products_installation_and_configuration_guides_list.html.

Protocol Offload

To reduce the load on the control plane of the Cisco Nexus Series device, Cisco NX-OS allows you to offload link-level protocol processing to the Fabric Extender CPU. The following protocols are supported:

- Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)
- Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)
- Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)

Quality of Service

Access Control Lists

The Fabric Extender supports the full range of ingress access control lists (ACLs) that are available on its parent Cisco Nexus Series device.

IGMP Snooping

Switched Port Analyzer

Fabric Interface Features

Oversubscription

Management Model

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender is managed by its parent switch over the fabric interfaces through a zero-touch configuration model. The switch discovers the Fabric Extender by detecting the fabric interfaces of the Fabric Extender.

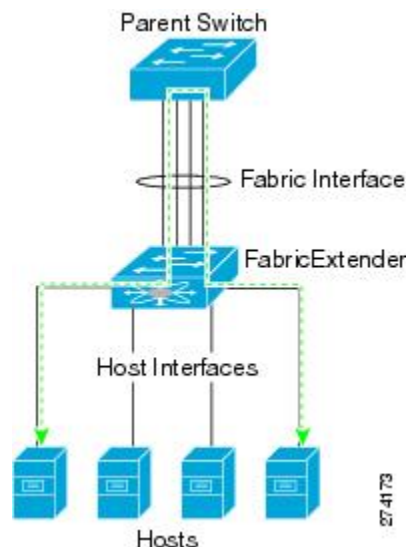
After discovery, if the Fabric Extender has been correctly associated with the parent switch, the following operations are performed:

- 1 The switch checks the software image compatibility and upgrades the Fabric Extender if necessary.
- 2 The switch and Fabric Extender establish in-band IP connectivity with each other.
The switch assigns an IP address in the range of loopback addresses (127.15.1.0/24) to the Fabric Extender to avoid conflicts with IP addresses that might be in use on the network.
- 3 The switch pushes the configuration data to the Fabric Extender. The Fabric Extender does not store any configuration locally.
- 4 The Fabric Extender updates the switch with its operational status. All Fabric Extender information is displayed using the switch commands for monitoring and troubleshooting.

Forwarding Model

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender does not perform any local switching. All traffic is sent to the parent switch that provides central forwarding and policy enforcement, including host-to-host communications between two systems that are connected to the same Fabric Extender as shown in the following figure.

Figure 23: Forwarding Model



The forwarding model facilitates feature consistency between the Fabric Extender and its parent Cisco Nexus Series device.



Note

The Fabric Extender provides end-host connectivity into the network fabric. As a result, BPDU Guard is enabled on all its host interfaces. If you connect a bridge or switch to a host interface, that interface is placed in an error-disabled state when a BPDU is received.

You cannot disable BPDU Guard on the host interfaces of the Fabric Extender.

The Fabric Extender supports egress multicast replication from the network to the host. Packets that are sent from the parent switch for multicast addresses attached to the Fabric Extender are replicated by the Fabric Extender ASICs and are then sent to corresponding hosts.

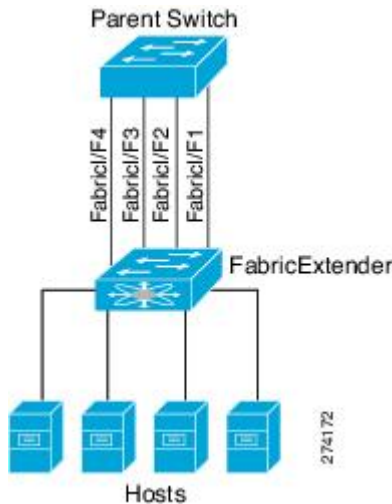
Connection Model

Two methods (the static pinning fabric interface connection and the Port Channel fabric interface connection) allow the traffic from an end host to the parent switch to be distributed when going through the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender.

Static Pinning Fabric Interface Connection

To provide a deterministic relationship between the host interfaces and the parent switch, you can configure the Fabric Extender to use individual fabric interface connections. This configuration connects the 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces as shown in the following figure. You can use any number of fabric interfaces up to the maximum available on the model of the Fabric Extender.

Figure 24: Static Pinning Fabric Interface Connections



When the Fabric Extender is brought up, its host interfaces are distributed equally among the available fabric interfaces. As a result, the bandwidth that is dedicated to each end host toward the parent switch is never changed by the switch but instead is always specified by you.



Note

If a fabric interface fails, all its associated host interfaces are brought down and remain down until the fabric interface is restored.

You must use the **pinning max-links** command to create a number of pinned fabric interface connections so that the parent switch can determine a distribution of host interfaces. The host interfaces are divided by the number of the max-links and distributed accordingly. The default value is max-links 1.



Caution

Changing the value of the **max-links** is disruptive; all the host interfaces on the Fabric Extender are brought down and back up as the parent switch reassigns its static pinning.

The pinning order of the host interfaces is initially determined by the order in which the fabric interfaces were configured. When the parent switch is restarted, the configured fabric interfaces are pinned to the host interfaces in an ascending order by the port number of the fabric interface.

To guarantee a deterministic and sticky association across a reboot, you can manually redistribute the pinning.

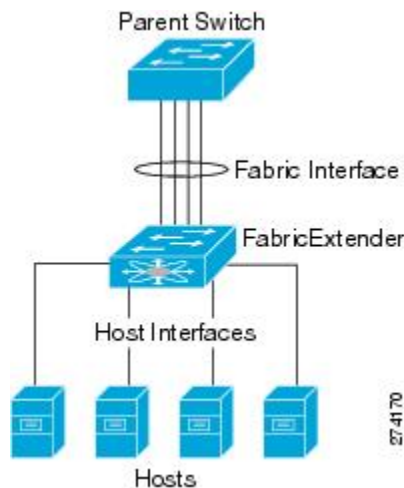
**Note**

The redistribution of the host interfaces will always be in an ascending order by the port number of the fabric interface.

Port Channel Fabric Interface Connection

To provide load balancing between the host interfaces and the parent switch, you can configure the Fabric Extender to use a port channel fabric interface connection. This connection bundles 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces into a single logical channel as shown in the following figure.

Figure 25: Port Channel Fabric Interface Connection



When you configure the Fabric Extender to use a port channel fabric interface connection to its parent switch, the switch load balances the traffic from the hosts that are connected to the host interface ports by using the following load-balancing criteria to select the link:

- For a Layer 2 frame, the switch uses the source and destination MAC addresses.
- For a Layer 3 frame, the switch uses the source and destination MAC addresses and the source and destination IP addresses.

**Note**

A fabric interface that fails in the port channel does not trigger a change to the host interfaces. Traffic is automatically redistributed across the remaining links in the port channel fabric interface. If all links in the fabric port channel go down, all host interfaces on the FEX are set to the down state.

Port Numbering Convention

Fabric Extender Image Management

No software ships with the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender. The Fabric Extender image is bundled into the system image of the parent switch. The image is automatically verified and updated (if required) during the association process between the parent switch and the Fabric Extender.

When you enter the **install all** command, it upgrades the software on the parent Cisco Nexus Series switch and also upgrades the software on any attached Fabric Extender. To minimize downtime as much as possible, the Fabric Extender remains online while the installation process loads its new software image. Once the software image has successfully loaded, the parent switch and the Fabric Extender both automatically reboot.

This process is required to maintain version compatibility between the parent switch and the Fabric Extender.

Fabric Extender Hardware

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender architecture allows hardware configurations with various host interface counts and speeds.

Chassis

The Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender is a 1 RU chassis that is designed for rack mounting. The chassis supports redundant hot-swappable fans and power supplies.

Ethernet Interfaces

There are four models of the Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extender:

- The Cisco Nexus 2148T has 48 1000BASE-T Ethernet host interfaces for its downlink connection to servers or hosts and 4 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces with SFP+ interface adapters for its uplink connection to the parent switch.
- The Cisco Nexus 2224TP has 24 100BASE-T/1000Base-T Ethernet host interfaces for its downlink connection to servers or hosts and 2 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces with SFP+ interface adapters for its uplink connection to the parent switch.
- The Cisco Nexus 2232PP has 32 10-Gigabit Ethernet host interfaces with SFP+ interface adapters and 8 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces with SFP+ interface adapters for its uplink connection to the parent switch.
- The Cisco Nexus 2248TP has 48 100BASE-T/1000Base-T Ethernet host interfaces for its downlink connection to servers or hosts and 4 10-Gigabit Ethernet fabric interfaces with SFP+ interface adapters for its uplink connection to the parent switch.

The Cisco Nexus 2248TP-E has all the features of the Cisco Nexus 2248TP with these additional features:

- A larger buffer to absorb large bursts.

- Support for an ingress and egress queue-limit per port.
 - Support for debug counters.
 - Support for pause no-drop behavior over a cable distance of 3000 meters between the Fabric Extender and switch.
 - Support for a user configurable shared-buffer.
- The Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for HP (NB22HP) has 16 1G/10-Gigabit Ethernet host interfaces. All host interfaces use all of the available fabric interfaces.
 - The Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Fujitsu (NB22FTS) has 16 10-Gigabit Ethernet host interfaces. All host interfaces use all of the available fabric interfaces.
 - The Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Dell (NB22DELL) has 16 1G/10-Gigabit Ethernet host interfaces. All host interfaces use all of the available fabric interfaces.

Associating a Fabric Extender to a Fabric Interface

Associating a Fabric Extender to an Ethernet Interface

Before You Begin

Ensure that you have enabled the Fabric Extender feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface ethernet** *slot/port*
3. **switchport mode fex-fabric**
4. **fex associate** *FEX-number*
5. (Optional) **show interface ethernet** *port/slot fex-intf*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i> Example: <pre>switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/40 switch(config)#</pre>	Specifies an Ethernet interface to configure.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switchport mode fex-fabric Example: switch(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric switch(config-if)#	Sets the interface to support an external Fabric Extender.
Step 4	fex associate FEX-number Example: switch(config-if)# fex associate 101 switch#	Associates the FEX number to the Fabric Extender unit attached to the interface. The range of the FEX number is from 100 to 199.
Step 5	show interface ethernet port/slot fex-intf Example: switch# show interface ethernet 1/40 fex-intf switch#	(Optional) Displays the association of a Fabric Extender to an Ethernet interface.

This example shows how to associate the Fabric Extender to an Ethernet interface on the parent device:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/40
switch(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch(config-if)# fex associate 101
switch(config)#
```

This example shows how to display the association of the Fabric Extender and the parent device:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/40 fex-intf
Fabric      FEX
Interface   Interfaces
-----
Eth1/40     Eth101/1/48  Eth101/1/47  Eth101/1/46  Eth101/1/45
            Eth101/1/44  Eth101/1/43  Eth101/1/42  Eth101/1/41
            Eth101/1/40  Eth101/1/39  Eth101/1/38  Eth101/1/37
            Eth101/1/36  Eth101/1/35  Eth101/1/34  Eth101/1/33
            Eth101/1/32  Eth101/1/31  Eth101/1/30  Eth101/1/29
            Eth101/1/28  Eth101/1/27  Eth101/1/26  Eth101/1/25
            Eth101/1/24  Eth101/1/23  Eth101/1/22  Eth101/1/21
            Eth101/1/20  Eth101/1/19  Eth101/1/18  Eth101/1/17
            Eth101/1/16  Eth101/1/15  Eth101/1/14  Eth101/1/13
            Eth101/1/12  Eth101/1/11  Eth101/1/10  Eth101/1/9
            Eth101/1/8   Eth101/1/7   Eth101/1/6   Eth101/1/5
            Eth101/1/4   Eth101/1/3   Eth101/1/2   Eth101/1/1
```

Associating a Fabric Extender to a Port Channel

Before You Begin

Ensure that you have enabled the Fabric Extender feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface port-channel** *channel*
3. **switchport mode fex-fabric**
4. **fex associate** *FEX-number*
5. (Optional) **show interface port-channel** *channel* **fex-intf**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface port-channel <i>channel</i> Example: switch(config)# interface port-channel 4 switch(config-if)#	Specifies a port channel to configure.
Step 3	switchport mode fex-fabric Example: switch(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric	Sets the port channel to support an external Fabric Extender.
Step 4	fex associate <i>FEX-number</i> Example: switch(config-if)# fex associate 101	Associates a FEX number to the Fabric Extender unit attached to the interface. The range is from 101 to 199.
Step 5	show interface port-channel <i>channel</i> fex-intf Example: switch# show interface port-channel 4 fex-intf	(Optional) Displays the association of a Fabric Extender to a port channel interface.

This example shows how to associate the Fabric Extender to a port channel interface on the parent device:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/28
switch(config-if)# channel-group 4
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/29
switch(config-if)# channel-group 4
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/30
switch(config-if)# channel-group 4
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/31
```

```

switch(config-if)# channel-group 4
switch(config-if)# no shutdown
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# interface port-channel 4
switch(config-if)# switchport
switch(config-if)# switchport mode fex-fabric
switch(config-if)# fex associate 101

```

**Tip**

As a best practice, only enter the **fex associate** command from the port channel interface, not from the physical interface.

**Note**

When adding physical interfaces to port channels, all configurations on the port channel and physical interface must match.

This example shows how to display the association of the Fabric Extender and the parent device:

```

switch# show interface port-channel 4 fex-intf
Fabric          FEX
Interface       Interfaces
-----
Po4             Eth101/1/48  Eth101/1/47  Eth101/1/46  Eth101/1/45
                Eth101/1/44  Eth101/1/43  Eth101/1/42  Eth101/1/41
                Eth101/1/40  Eth101/1/39  Eth101/1/38  Eth101/1/37
                Eth101/1/36  Eth101/1/35  Eth101/1/34  Eth101/1/33
                Eth101/1/32  Eth101/1/31  Eth101/1/30  Eth101/1/29
                Eth101/1/28  Eth101/1/27  Eth101/1/26  Eth101/1/25
                Eth101/1/24  Eth101/1/23  Eth101/1/22  Eth101/1/21
                Eth101/1/20  Eth101/1/19  Eth101/1/18  Eth101/1/17
                Eth101/1/16  Eth101/1/15  Eth101/1/14  Eth101/1/13
                Eth101/1/12  Eth101/1/11  Eth101/1/10  Eth101/1/9
                Eth101/1/8   Eth101/1/7   Eth101/1/6   Eth101/1/5
                Eth101/1/4   Eth101/1/3   Eth101/1/2   Eth101/1/1

```

Disassociating a Fabric Extender from an Interface

Before You Begin

Ensure that you have enabled the Fabric Extender feature.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface {ethernet *slot/port* | port-channel *channel*}**
3. **no fex associate**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface {ethernet <i>slot/port</i> port-channel <i>channel</i>} Example: <pre>switch(config)# interface port-channel 4 switch(config-if)#</pre>	Specifies the interface to configure. The interface can be an Ethernet interface or a port channel.
Step 3	no fex associate Example: <pre>switch(config-if)# no fex associate</pre>	Disassociates the Fabric Extender unit attached to the interface.

Configuring Fabric Extender Global Features

You can configure global features on the Fabric Extender.

Before You Begin

Ensure that you have enabled the Fabric Extender feature set.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **fex *FEX-number***
3. (Optional) **description *desc***
4. (Optional) **no description**
5. (Optional) **no type**
6. (Optional) **pinning max-links *uplinks***
7. (Optional) **no pinning max-links**
8. (Optional) **serial *serial***
9. (Optional) **no serial**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fex <i>FEX-number</i> Example: <pre>switch(config)# fex 101 switch(config-fex)#</pre>	Enters FEX configuration mode for the specified Fabric Extender. The range of the <i>FEX-number</i> is from 100 to 199.
Step 3	description <i>desc</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# description Rack7A-N2K</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the description. The default is the string FEXxxxx where xxxx is the FEX number. If the FEX number is 123, the description is FEX0123.
Step 4	no description Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# no description</pre>	(Optional) Deletes the description.
Step 5	no type Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# no type</pre>	(Optional) Deletes the FEX type. When a Fabric Extender is connected to the fabric interfaces and does not match the configured type that is saved in the binary configuration on the parent switch, all configurations for all interfaces on the Fabric Extender are deleted.
Step 6	pinning max-links <i>uplinks</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# pinning max-links 2</pre>	(Optional) Defines the number of uplinks. The default is 1. The range is from 1 to 4. This command is only applicable if the Fabric Extender is connected to its parent switch using one or more statically pinned fabric interfaces. There can only be one port channel connection. Caution Changing the number of uplinks with the pinning max-links command disrupts all the host interface ports of the Fabric Extender.
Step 7	no pinning max-links Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# no pinning max-links</pre>	(Optional) Resets the number of uplinks to the default. Caution Changing the number of uplinks with the no pinning max-links command disrupts all the host interface ports of the Fabric Extender.
Step 8	serial <i>serial</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# serial JAF1339BDSK</pre>	(Optional) Defines a serial number string. If this command is configured, a switch allows the corresponding chassis ID to associate (using the fex associate command) only if the Fabric Extender reports a matching serial number string.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Caution Configuring a serial number that does not match the specified Fabric Extender forces the Fabric Extender offline.
Step 9	no serial Example: <code>switch(config-fex)# no serial</code>	(Optional) Deletes the serial number string.

Enabling the Fabric Extender Locator LED

The locator beacon LED on the Fabric Extender allows you to locate a specific Fabric Extender in a rack.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **locator-led fex** *FEX-number*
2. (Optional) **no locator-led fex** *FEX-number*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	locator-led fex <i>FEX-number</i> Example: <code>switch# locator-led fex 101</code>	Turns on the locator beacon LED for a specific Fabric Extender.
Step 2	no locator-led fex <i>FEX-number</i> Example: <code>switch# no locator-led fex 101</code>	(Optional) Turns off the locator beacon LED for a specific Fabric Extender.

Redistributing the Links

When you provision the Fabric Extender with statically pinned interfaces, the downlink host interfaces on the Fabric Extender are pinned to the fabric interfaces in the order they were initially configured. If you want to maintain a specific relationship of host interfaces to fabric interface across reboots, you should repin the links.

You may want to perform this function in these two situations:

- A change in the max-links configuration.
- If you need to maintain the pinning order of host interfaces to fabric interfaces.

Changing the Number of Links

If you initially configured a specific port on the parent switch, for example port 33, as your only fabric interface, all 48 host interfaces are pinned to this port. If you provision another port, for example 35, then you must enter the **pinning max-links 2** command to redistribute the host interfaces. All host interfaces are brought down and host interfaces 1 to 24 are pinned to fabric interface 33 and host interfaces 25 to 48 are pinned to fabric interface 35.

Maintaining the Pinning Order

The pinning order of the host interfaces is initially determined by the order in which the fabric interfaces were configured. In this example, four fabric interfaces were configured in the following order:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/35 fex-intf
Fabric          FEX
Interface       Interfaces
-----
Eth1/35         Eth101/1/12  Eth101/1/11  Eth101/1/10  Eth101/1/9
                  Eth101/1/8   Eth101/1/7   Eth101/1/6   Eth101/1/5
                  Eth101/1/4   Eth101/1/3   Eth101/1/2   Eth101/1/1

switch# show interface ethernet 1/33 fex-intf
Fabric          FEX
Interface       Interfaces
-----
Eth1/33         Eth101/1/24  Eth101/1/23  Eth101/1/22  Eth101/1/21
                  Eth101/1/20  Eth101/1/19  Eth101/1/18  Eth101/1/17
                  Eth101/1/16  Eth101/1/15  Eth101/1/14  Eth101/1/13

switch# show interface ethernet 1/38 fex-intf
Fabric          FEX
Interface       Interfaces
-----
Eth1/38         Eth101/1/36  Eth101/1/35  Eth101/1/34  Eth101/1/33
                  Eth101/1/32  Eth101/1/31  Eth101/1/30  Eth101/1/29
                  Eth101/1/28  Eth101/1/27  Eth101/1/26  Eth101/1/25

switch# show interface ethernet 1/40 fex-intf
Fabric          FEX
Interface       Interfaces
-----
Eth1/40         Eth101/1/48  Eth101/1/47  Eth101/1/46  Eth101/1/45
                  Eth101/1/44  Eth101/1/43  Eth101/1/42  Eth101/1/41
                  Eth101/1/40  Eth101/1/39  Eth101/1/38  Eth101/1/37
```

The next time that you reboot the Fabric Extender, the configured fabric interfaces are pinned to the host interfaces in an ascending order by port number of the fabric interface. If you want to configure the same fixed distribution of host interfaces without restarting the Fabric Extender, enter the **fex pinning redistribute** command.

Redistributing Host Interfaces



Caution

This command disrupts all the host interface ports of the Fabric Extender.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **fex pinning redistribute** *FEX-number*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config) #	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fex pinning redistribute <i>FEX-number</i> Example: switch(config) # fex pinning redistribute 101 switch(config) #	Redistributes the host connections. The range of <i>FEX-number</i> is from 100 to 199.

Verifying the Fabric Extender Configuration

Use the following commands to display configuration information about the defined interfaces on a Fabric Extender:

Command or Action	Purpose
show fex [<i>FEX-number</i>] [detail]	Displays information about a specific Fabric Extender or all attached units.
show interface <i>type number</i> fex-intf	Displays the Fabric Extender ports that are pinned to a specific switch interface.
show interface fex-fabric	Displays the switch interfaces that have detected a Fabric Extender uplink.
show interface ethernet <i>number</i> transceiver [fex-fabric]	Displays the SFP+ transceiver and diagnostic optical monitoring (DOM) information for the Fabric Extender uplinks.
show feature-set	Displays the status of the feature sets on the device.

Configuration Examples for the Fabric Extender

This example shows how to display all the attached Fabric Extender units:

```
switch# show fex
```

FEX Number	FEX Description	FEX State	Model	FEX	Serial
100	FEX0100	Online	N2K-C2248TP-1GE		JAF1339BDSK
101	FEX0101	Online	N2K-C2232P-10GE		JAF1333ADDD
102	FEX0102	Online	N2K-C2232P-10GE		JAS12334ABC

This example shows how to display the detailed status of a specific Fabric Extender:

```
switch# show fex 100 detail
FEX: 100 Description: FEX0100 state: Online
FEX version: 5.0(2)N1(1) [Switch version: 5.0(2)N1(1)]
FEX Interim version: 5.0(2)N1(0.205)
Switch Interim version: 5.0(2)N1(0.205)
Extender Model: N2K-C2224TP-1GE, Extender Serial: JAF1427BQLG
Part No: 73-13373-01
Card Id: 132, Mac Addr: 68:ef:bd:62:2a:42, Num Macs: 64
Module Sw Gen: 21 [Switch Sw Gen: 21]
post level: complete
pinning-mode: static Max-links: 1
Fabric port for control traffic: Eth1/29
Fabric interface state:
  Pol100 - Interface Up. State: Active
  Eth1/29 - Interface Up. State: Active
  Eth1/30 - Interface Up. State: Active
```

Fex Port	State	Fabric Port	Primary Fabric
Eth100/1/1	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/2	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/3	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/4	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/5	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/6	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/7	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/8	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/9	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/10	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/11	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/12	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/13	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/14	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/15	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/16	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/17	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/18	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/19	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/20	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/21	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/22	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/23	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/24	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/25	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/26	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/27	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/28	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/29	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/30	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/31	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/32	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/33	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/34	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/35	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/36	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/37	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/38	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/39	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/40	Down	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/41	Up	Po100	Po100
Eth100/1/42	Up	Po100	Po100

```

Eth100/1/43    Up      Po100      Po100
Eth100/1/44    Up      Po100      Po100
Eth100/1/45    Up      Po100      Po100
Eth100/1/46    Up      Po100      Po100
Eth100/1/47    Up      Po100      Po100
Eth100/1/48    Up      Po100      Po100

```

Logs:

```

02/05/2010 20:12:17.764153: Module register received
02/05/2010 20:12:17.765408: Registration response sent
02/05/2010 20:12:17.845853: Module Online Sequence
02/05/2010 20:12:23.447218: Module Online

```

This example shows how to display the Fabric Extender interfaces pinned to a specific switch interface:

```
switch# show interface port-channel 100 fex-intf
```

```

Fabric      FEX
Interface    Interfaces
-----
Po100        Eth100/1/48  Eth100/1/47  Eth100/1/46  Eth100/1/45
              Eth100/1/44  Eth100/1/43  Eth100/1/42  Eth100/1/41
              Eth100/1/40  Eth100/1/39  Eth100/1/38  Eth100/1/37
              Eth100/1/36  Eth100/1/35  Eth100/1/34  Eth100/1/33
              Eth100/1/32  Eth100/1/31  Eth100/1/30  Eth100/1/29
              Eth100/1/28  Eth100/1/27  Eth100/1/26  Eth100/1/25
              Eth100/1/24  Eth100/1/22  Eth100/1/20  Eth100/1/19
              Eth100/1/18  Eth100/1/17  Eth100/1/16  Eth100/1/15
              Eth100/1/14  Eth100/1/13  Eth100/1/12  Eth100/1/11
              Eth100/1/10  Eth100/1/9   Eth100/1/8   Eth100/1/7
              Eth100/1/6   Eth100/1/5   Eth100/1/4   Eth100/1/3
              Eth100/1/2   Eth100/1/1

```

This example shows how to display the switch interfaces that are connected to a Fabric Extender uplink:

```
switch# show interface fex-fabric
```

```

Fabric      Fabric      Fex      FEX
Fex  Port    Port State  Uplink  Model      Serial
-----
100   Eth1/29    Active   3       N2K-C2248TP-1GE  JAF1339BDSK
100   Eth1/30    Active   4       N2K-C2248TP-1GE  JAF1339BDSK
102   Eth1/33    Active   1       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAS12334ABC
102   Eth1/34    Active   2       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAS12334ABC
102   Eth1/35    Active   3       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAS12334ABC
102   Eth1/36    Active   4       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAS12334ABC
101   Eth1/37    Active   5       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAF1333ADDD
101   Eth1/38    Active   6       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAF1333ADDD
101   Eth1/39    Active   7       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAF1333ADDD
101   Eth1/40    Active   8       N2K-C2232P-10GE  JAF1333ADDD

```

This example shows how to display the SFP+ transceiver and diagnostic optical monitoring (DOM) information for Fabric Extender uplinks for an SFP+ transceiver that is plugged into the parent switch interface:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/40 transceiver
```

```

Ethernet1/40
  sfp is present
  name is CISCO-MOLEX INC
  part number is 74752-9026
  revision is A0
  serial number is MOC13321057
  nominal bitrate is 12000 Mbits/sec
  Link length supported for copper is 3 m(s)
  cisco id is --
  cisco extended id number is 4

```

This example shows how to display the SFP+ transceiver and DOM information for Fabric Extender uplinks for an SFP+ transceiver that is plugged into the uplink port on the Fabric Extender:

```
switch# show interface ethernet 1/40 transceiver fex-fabric
```

```

Ethernet1/40
  sfp is present
  name is CISCO-MOLEX INC
  part number is 74752-9026
  revision is A0

```

```

serial number is MOC13321057
nominal bitrate is 12000 Mbits/sec
Link length supported for 50/125mm fiber is 0 m(s)
Link length supported for 62.5/125mm fiber is 0 m(s)
cisco id is --
cisco extended id number is 4

```

Verifying the Chassis Management Information

Use the following to display configuration information used on the switch supervisor to manage the Fabric Extender.

Command or Action	Purpose
show diagnostic result fex <i>FEX-number</i>	Displays results from the diagnostic test for a Fabric Extender.
show environment fex { <i>all</i> <i>FEX-number</i> } [<i>temperature</i> <i>power</i> <i>fan</i>]	Displays the environmental sensor status.
show inventory fex <i>FEX-number</i>	Displays inventory information for a Fabric Extender.
show module fex [<i>FEX-number</i>]	Displays module information about a Fabric Extender.
show sprom fex <i>FEX-number</i> { <i>all</i> <i>backplane</i> <i>powersupply ps-num</i> } <i>all</i>	Displays the contents of the serial PROM (SPROM) on the Fabric Extender.

Configuration Examples for Chassis Management

This example shows how to display the module information about all connected Fabric Extender units:

```

switch# show module fex
FEX Mod Ports Card Type Model Status.
---
100 1 48 Fabric Extender 48x1GE + 4x10G Mod N2K-C2248TP-1GE present
101 1 32 Fabric Extender 32x10GE + 8x10G Mo N2K-C2232P-10GE present
102 1 32 Fabric Extender 32x10GE + 8x10G Mo N2K-C2232P-10GE present

FEX Mod Sw Hw World-Wide-Name(s) (WWN)
---
100 1 4.2(1)N1(1) 0.103 --
101 1 4.2(1)N1(1) 1.0 --
102 1 4.2(1)N1(1) 1.0 --

FEX Mod MAC-Address(es) Serial-Num
---
100 1 000d.ece3.2800 to 000d.ece3.282f JAF1339BDSK
101 1 000d.ecca.73c0 to 000d.ecca.73df JAF1333ADDD
102 1 000d.ecd6.bec0 to 000d.ecd6.bedf JAS12334ABC

```

This example shows how to display the module information about a specific Fabric Extender:

```

switch# show module fex 100
FEX Mod Ports Card Type Model Status.
---
100 1 48 Fabric Extender 48x1GE + 4x10G Mod N2K-C2248TP-1GE present

FEX Mod Sw Hw World-Wide-Name(s) (WWN)
---
100 1 4.2(1)N1(1) 0.103 --

```

```

FEX Mod  MAC-Address(es)                      Serial-Num
-----  -
100 1    000d.ece3.2800 to 000d.ece3.282f      JAF1339BDSK

```

This example shows how to display the inventory information about a specific Fabric Extender:

```

switch# show inventory fex 101
NAME: "FEX 101 CHASSIS", DESCR: "N2K-C2248TP-1GE CHASSIS"
PID: N2K-C2248TP-1GE , VID: V00 , SN: SSI13380FSM

NAME: "FEX 101 Module 1", DESCR: "Fabric Extender Module: 48x1GE, 4x10GE Supervisor"
PID: N2K-C2248TP-1GE , VID: V00 , SN: JAF1339BDSK

NAME: "FEX 101 Fan 1", DESCR: "Fabric Extender Fan module"
PID: N2K-C2248-FAN , VID: N/A , SN: N/A

NAME: "FEX 101 Power Supply 2", DESCR: "Fabric Extender AC power supply"
PID: NXK-PAC-400W , VID: 000, SN: LIT13370QD6

```

This example shows how to display diagnostic test results for a specific Fabric Extender:

```

switch# show diagnostic result fex 101
FEX-101: 48x1GE/Supervisor SerialNo : JAF1339BDSK
Overall Diagnostic Result for FEX-101 : OK

Test results: (. = Pass, F = Fail, U = Untested)
TestPlatform:
0)          SPROM: -----> .
1) Inband interface: -----> .
2)          Fan: -----> .
3) Power Supply: -----> .
4) Temperature Sensor: -----> .

TestForwardingPorts:
Eth  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24
Port -----
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Eth  25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48
Port -----
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

TestFabricPorts:
Fabric 1  2  3  4
Port -----
. . . .

```

This example shows how to display the environment status for a specific Fabric Extender:

```

switch# show environment fex 101

Temperature Fex 101:
-----
Module  Sensor      MajorThresh  MinorThres  CurTemp  Status
(Celsius) (Celsius)
-----
1       Outlet-1      60           50          33       ok
1       Outlet-2      60           50          38       ok
1       Inlet-1       50           40          35       ok
1       Die-1       100          90          44       ok

Fan Fex: 101:
-----
Fan      Model          Hw      Status
-----
Chassis  N2K-C2148-FAN    --      ok
PS-1     --              --      absent
PS-2     NXK-PAC-400W     --      ok

```

Power Supply Fex 101:

Voltage: 12 Volts

PS	Model	Power (Watts)	Power (Amp)	Status
1	--	--	--	--
2	NXK-PAC-400W	4.32	0.36	ok

Mod	Model	Power Requested (Watts)	Power Requested (Amp)	Power Allocated (Watts)	Power Allocated (Amp)	Status
1	N2K-C2248TP-1GE	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	powered-up

Power Usage Summary:

Power Supply redundancy mode: redundant

Total Power Capacity 4.32 W

Power reserved for Supervisor(s) 0.00 W

Power currently used by Modules 0.00 W

Total Power Available 4.32 W

This example shows how to display the SPROM for a specific Fabric Extender:

```
switch# show sprom fex 101 all
DISPLAY FEX 101 SUP sprom contents
Common block:
Block Signature : 0xabab
Block Version   : 3
Block Length    : 160
Block Checksum  : 0x1a1e
EEPROM Size     : 65535
Block Count     : 3
FRU Major Type  : 0x6002
FRU Minor Type  : 0x0
OEM String      : Cisco Systems, Inc.
Product Number  : N2K-C2248TP-1GE
Serial Number   : JAF1339BDSK
Part Number     : 73-12748-01
Part Revision   : 11
Mfg Deviation   : 0
H/W Version     : 0.103
Mfg Bits        : 0
Engineer Use    : 0
snmpOID         : 9.12.3.1.9.78.3.0
Power Consump   : 1666
RMA Code        : 0-0-0-0
CLEI Code       : XXXXXXXXTBDV00
VID             : V00
Supervisor Module specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6002
Block Version   : 2
Block Length    : 103
Block Checksum  : 0x2686
Feature Bits    : 0x0
HW Changes Bits : 0x0
Card Index      : 11016
MAC Addresses   : 00-00-00-00-00-00
Number of MACs  : 0
Number of EPLD  : 0
Port Type-Num   : 1-48;2-4
Sensor #1       : 60,50
Sensor #2       : 60,50
```

Cisco Nexus 5000 Series NX-OS Layer 2 Switching Configuration Guide, Release 5.2(1)N1(2)

```

00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00
License software-module specific block:
Block Signature : 0x6006
Block Version   : 1
Block Length    : 16
Block Checksum  : 0x86f
lic usage bits:
ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff

DISPLAY FEX 101 power-supply 2 sprom contents:
Common block:
Block Signature : 0xabab
Block Version   : 3
Block Length    : 160
Block Checksum  : 0x1673
EEPROM Size     : 65535
Block Count     : 2
FRU Major Type  : 0xab01
FRU Minor Type  : 0x0
OEM String      : Cisco Systems Inc   NXK-PAC-400W
Product Number  : NXK-PAC-400W
Serial Number   : LIT13370QD6
Part Number     : 341
Part Revision   : -037
CLEI Code       : 5-01      01   000
VID             : 000
snmpOID         : 12336.12336.12336.12336.12336.12336.12374.12336
H/W Version     : 43777.2
Current         : 36
RMA Code        : 200-32-32-32
Power supply specific block:
Block Signature : 0x0
Block Version   : 0
Block Length    : 0
Block Checksum  : 0x0
Feature Bits    : 0x0
Current 110v    : 36
Current 220v    : 36
Stackmib OID    : 0

```

Configuring the Cisco Nexus N2248TP-E Fabric Extender

The Cisco Nexus 2248TP-E Fabric Extender supports all of the CLI commands of the Cisco Nexus 2248TP Fabric Extender with additional commands to configure the following:

- Shared buffer (FEX global level)
- Queue-limit in ingress direction (FEX global level and interface level)
- Queue-limit in egress direction (FEX global level and interface level)
- No drop class over a distance of 3000 meters between the FEX and switch (FEX global level)

Configuring the Shared Buffer

The following are guidelines for the configuration of the shared buffer:

- Configuring the shared buffer is done at the FEX global level.
- The total available buffer is 32 MB which is shared in both the ingress and egress directions.
- The default size of the shared buffer is 2539 2KB.

However, when configuring an Ethernet-based pause no-drop class, the shared buffer size changes to 10800 KB. This change is required to increase the dedicated buffer that supports the pause no-drop class. The pause no-drop class does not use buffer space from the shared-pool.



Note

Performing these commands might result in traffic disruption on all ports.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **fex chassis_id**
3. **hardware N2248TP-E shared-buffer-size buffer-size**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fex chassis_id Example: switch(config)# fex 100 switch(config-fex)#	Enters configuration mode for the specified FEX. The range of the <i>chassis_id</i> value is 100 to 199.
Step 3	hardware N2248TP-E shared-buffer-size buffer-size Example: switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E shared-buffer-size 25000	Specifies the shared buffer size (KB). The range of the <i>buffer-size</i> value is 10800 KB to 2539 KB. Note The hardware N2248TP-E shared-buffer-size command specifies the default shared buffer size of 25392 KB.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# fex 100
```

```
switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E shared-buffer-size 25000
switch(config-fex)#
```

Configuring the Queue-Limit at the Global Level

The following are guidelines for the configuration of the queue-limit:

- The tx queue limit specifies the buffer size used for each queue in the egress (n2h) direction.
- The rx queue limit specifies the buffer size used for each port in the ingress (h2n) direction.
- You can adjust the ingress queue limit when the FEX uplink experiences temporary congestion.
- You can adjust the egress queue limit for improved burst absorption or in a situation where there is a many to one traffic pattern.
- When you disable the tx queue-limit, any output port is able to use the entire shared buffer.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **fex chassis_id**
3. **hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit queue-limit tx|rx**

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fex chassis_id Example: <pre>switch(config)# fex 100 switch(config)#</pre>	Enters configuration mode for the specified FEX. The range of the <i>chassis_id</i> value is 100 to 199.
Step 3	hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit queue-limit tx rx Example: <pre>switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit 83000 tx</pre>	Controls the egress (tx) or ingress (rx) queue tail drop threshold level on a FEX. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The default queue-limit for tx (egress) is 4 MB. Note The hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit command specifies the default tx queue-limit. • The default queue-limit for rx (ingress) is 1 MB. Note The hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit rx command specifies the default rx queue-limit.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# fex 100
switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit 83000 tx
switch(config-fex)#
```

Configuring the Queue-Limit at the Port Level

You can overwrite the global level configuration by configuring the queue-limit at the port level.

You can also disable the queue-limit at the port level.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **interface ethernet** *chassis_id / slot/port*
3. **hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit** *queue-limit tx|rx*

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface ethernet <i>chassis_id / slot/port</i> Example: <pre>switch(config)# interface ethernet 100/1/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit <i>queue-limit tx rx</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-if)# hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit 83000 tx</pre>	Controls the egress (tx) or ingress (rx) queue tail drop threshold level on a FEX. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The default queue-limit for tx (egress) is 4 MB. • The default queue-limit for rx (ingress) is 1 MB.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 100/1/1
switch(config-if)# hardware N2248TP-E queue-limit 83000 tx
switch(config-if)#
```

Configuring Uplink Distance

The Cisco Nexus N2248TP-E FEX supports a pause no-drop class up to a distance of 3000 meters between the FEX and the switch.

The default cable length between the FEX and the switch is 300 meters.



Note

When the pause no-drop class is not configured, the uplink distance configuration has no effect.

SUMMARY STEPS

1. **configure terminal**
2. **fex *chassis_id***
3. **hardware N2248TP-E uplink-pause-no-drop distance *distance-value***

DETAILED STEPS

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fex <i>chassis_id</i> Example: switch(config)# fex 100 switch(config-fex)#	Enters configuration mode for the specified FEX. The range of the <i>chassis_id</i> value is 100 to 199.
Step 3	hardware N2248TP-E uplink-pause-no-drop distance <i>distance-value</i> Example: switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E uplink-pause-no-drop distance 3000	Specifies the no-drop distance between the FEX and the switch. The maximum distance is 3000 meters. Note The hardware N2248TP-E uplink-pause-no-drop distance command specifies the default 300 meter cable length.

Example:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# fex 100
switch(config-fex)# hardware N2248TP-E uplink-pause-no-drop distance 3000
switch(config-fex)#
```



INDEX

10-Gigabit Ethernet interface [176](#)
1000BASE-T Ethernet interface [176](#)
100BASE-T Ethernet interface [176](#)
802.1Q VLANs [34, 45](#)
 configuring [45](#)
 private VLANs [34](#)

A

access VLANs [39](#)
 understanding [39](#)
ACL support [172](#)
active-active vPC topology [170](#)
aging time, configuring [142](#)
 MAC table [142](#)
associating fabric extender [177](#)

B

blocking state, STP [69](#)
BPDU guard [114](#)
BPDU Guard [169, 173](#)
bridge ID [60](#)
broadcast storms [161](#)

C

CDP [169, 171](#)
changed information [1](#)
 description [1](#)
changing max-links [184](#)
chassis [176](#)
chassis configuration mode [181](#)
chassis ID [176](#)
Cisco Discovery Protocol, See [CDP](#)
Cisco Nexus 2148T [176](#)
Cisco Nexus 2224PP [176](#)
Cisco Nexus 2232PP [176](#)

Cisco Nexus 2248TP [176](#)
Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for Fujitsu (NB22FTS) [176](#)
Cisco Nexus B22 Fabric Extender for HP (NB22HP) [176](#)
CIST regional root [88](#)
CIST root [89](#)
class of service, See [CoS](#)
clearing dynamic addresses [143](#)
 MAC table [143](#)
community ports [20](#)
community VLANs [20, 21](#)
configuration data [172](#)
configuration examples [134](#)
 Flex Link [134](#)
configuring [14, 30, 31](#)
 isolated trunk port [31](#)
 promiscuous trunk port [30](#)
 VLANs [14](#)
CoS [172](#)

D

Data Center Bridging Exchange, See [DCBX](#)
DCBX [171](#)
default settings [129](#)
 Flex Link [129](#)
description [181](#)
digital optical monitoring, See [DOM](#)
DOM [172](#)
drop queue [172](#)
dual homed fabric extender vPC topology [170](#)

E

edge port (PortFast) [169](#)
enhanced vPC [48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55](#)
 about [48](#)
 configuration overview [50](#)
 example configuration [55](#)
 failure response [49](#)

enhanced vPC (*continued*)

- licensing [50](#)
- scalability [49](#)
- supported platforms [48](#)
- supported topologies [48](#)
- verifying common port channel members [53](#)
- verifying configuration [51](#)
- verifying interface consistency [54](#)
- verifying port channel numbers [52](#)

Ethernet fabric interface [168](#)Ethernet interface [176](#)extended range VLANs [8](#)**F**fabric interface [168](#)fabric interface Port Channel [175](#)fail-over load balancing [175](#)FEX trunk port [32](#)pvlan [32](#)FEX-number [176](#)Flex Link [129, 131, 134](#)configuration examples [134](#)default settings [129](#)preemption, configuring [131](#)Flex Links [127, 128, 130](#)configuring [130](#)guidelines and limitations [128](#)information about [127](#)**G**guidelines and limitations [128](#)Flex Links [128](#)**H**host interface [168](#)host interface autonegotiation [172](#)host interface flow control defaults [172](#)host interface link-level flow control [172](#)host ports [20](#)kinds of [20](#)**I**ICMPv2 [146](#)IEEE 802.1p [172](#)IEEE 802.1w [85](#)IEEE 802.3x [172](#)IGMP [148](#)snooping parameters, configuring [148](#)IGMP forwarding [147](#)IGMP snooping [147, 154, 172](#)interoperation with MVR [154](#)queries [147](#)IGMPv1 [146](#)IGMPv3 [147](#)image management [176](#)information about [127](#)Flex Links [127](#)isolated port [20](#)isolated VLANs [20, 21](#)**J**jumbo frame [172](#)**L**LACP [171](#)LAN interface [41](#)Ethernet access port [41](#)Layer 2 switching [3](#)Ethernet switching [3](#)LED beacon [183](#)licensing [50, 154](#)enhanced vPC [50](#)MVR [154](#)Link Aggregation Control Protocol, See [LACP](#)Link Failure [72, 90](#)detecting unidirectional [72](#)Link Layer Discovery Protocol, See [LLDP](#)LLDP [171](#)local switching [173](#)locator LED [183](#)loopback address assignment [172](#)loopback address range [172](#)**M**MAC address configuration [143](#)verifying [143](#)MAC addresses [141](#)static, configuring [141](#)MAC table [142, 143](#)aging time, configuring [142](#)clearing dynamic addresses [143](#)manual redistribution [174](#)

max-links disruption [174](#)
 maximum transmission unit, See [MTU](#)
 MST [88, 97](#)
 CIST regional root [88](#)
 setting to default values [97](#)
 MSTP [85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 97](#)
 boundary ports [90](#)
 described [90](#)
 CIST regional root [88](#)
 CIST root [89](#)
 CIST, described [87](#)
 CST [87, 88](#)
 defined [87](#)
 operations between regions [88](#)
 IEEE 802.1s [88](#)
 terminology [88](#)
 IST [87, 88](#)
 operations within a region [87](#)
 mapping VLANs to MST instance [97](#)
 MST region [85, 86, 87, 89](#)
 CIST [87](#)
 described [85](#)
 hop-count mechanism [89](#)
 supported spanning-tree instances [86](#)
 MTU [172](#)
 multicast replication [173](#)
 multicast storms [161](#)
 MVR [153, 154, 155, 157, 158](#)
 configuring global parameters [155](#)
 configuring interfaces [157](#)
 default settings [155](#)
 guidelines and limitations [154](#)
 interoperation with IGMP snooping [154](#)
 interoperation with vPC snooping [154](#)
 licensing [154](#)
 overview [153](#)
 verifying the configuration [158](#)

N

native 802.1Q VLANs [45](#)
 configuring [45](#)
 new in this release [1](#)
 new information [1](#)
 description [1](#)
 no-drop queue [172](#)

O

oversubscription [172](#)
 oversubscription ratio [172](#)

P

packet counter [169](#)
 per class flow control [172](#)
 PFC [172](#)
 pinning max-links [181](#)
 port channel [175](#)
 port channel fabric interface [168, 172](#)
 port channel host interface [168, 169](#)
 port numbering [176](#)
 PortFast BPDU filtering [115](#)
 ports [15](#)
 adding to VLANs [15](#)
 preemption, configuring [131](#)
 Flex Link [131](#)
 primary VLANs [20](#)
 priority flow control, See [PFC](#)
 private VLAN [170](#)
 private VLANs [20, 21, 23, 24, 34](#)
 802.1Q VLANs [34](#)
 community VLANs [20, 21](#)
 end station access to [24](#)
 isolated trunk [23](#)
 isolated VLANs [20, 21](#)
 ports [20](#)
 community [20](#)
 isolated [20](#)
 promiscuous [20](#)
 primary VLANs [20](#)
 promiscuous trunk [23](#)
 secondary VLANs [20](#)
 promiscuous ports [20](#)
 pvlan [32](#)
 FEX trunk port [32](#)

Q

QoS [172](#)
 QoS broadcast class [172](#)
 QoS egress policies [172](#)
 QoS multicast class [172](#)
 quality-of-service, See [QoS](#)
 queue-limit [194, 195](#)
 global level [194](#)
 port level [195](#)

R

rapid PVST priority [80](#)
 Rapid PVST+ [74](#)
 configuring [74](#)

rapid PVST+ configurations [84](#)
 verifying [84](#)
 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol [85](#)
 redistributing host interfaces [184](#)
 reduced MAC address [60](#)
 reserved-range VLANs [8](#)
 root guard [117](#)
 RSTP [64, 67, 71, 85](#)
 active topology [67](#)
 BPDU [71](#)
 processing [71](#)
 designated port, defined [67](#)
 designated switch, defined [67](#)
 proposal-agreement handshake process [64](#)
 rapid convergence [64](#)
 point-to-point links [64](#)
 root ports [64](#)
 root port, defined [67](#)

S

secondary VLANs [20](#)
 serial number [181](#)
 SFP+ [176](#)
 SFP+ interface adapter [176](#)
 SFP+ validation [172](#)
 shared buffer [193](#)
 configuring [193](#)
 show diagnostics [188](#)
 show environment [188](#)
 show fabric interface [184](#)
 show fex [185](#)
 show inventory [188](#)
 show modules [188](#)
 show SPROM [188](#)
 show transceiver status [185](#)
 single homed fabric extender vPC topology [170](#)
 small form-factor pluggable transceiver [176](#)
 snooping parameters, configuring [148](#)
 IGMP [148](#)
 SPAN restrictions [172](#)
 SPAN source ports [172](#)
 static MAC addresses, configuring [141](#)
 static pinning [174](#)
 STP [64, 69, 70, 113, 114](#)
 edge ports [64, 113](#)
 network ports [114](#)
 normal ports [114](#)
 port types [113](#)
 PortFast [64, 113](#)

STP (*continued*)
 understanding [69, 70](#)
 Blocking State [69](#)
 disabled state [70](#)
 forwarding state [69](#)
 learning state [69](#)
 STP bridge ID [60](#)
 STP overview [59](#)
 STP root guard [117](#)
 switchport fex-fabric mode [172](#)
 switchport saved configuration [172](#)

T

traffic storms [163](#)
 control [163](#)
 type [181](#)

U

understanding [39](#)
 access VLANs [39](#)
 unicast storms [161](#)
 uplink distance [196](#)
 configuring [196](#)

V

verifying [17, 84](#)
 rapid PVST+ configurations [84](#)
 VLAN configurations [17](#)
 version compatibility [176](#)
 VLAN configurations [17](#)
 verifying [17](#)
 VLAN reserved ranges [12](#)
 changing [12](#)
 VLANs [8, 12, 14, 15, 34](#)
 adding ports to [15](#)
 changing [12](#)
 configuring [14](#)
 extended range [8](#)
 private [34](#)
 reserved range [8](#)
 vPC [48, 154](#)
 enhanced [48](#)
 interoperation with MVR [154](#)
 vPC topology [170](#)